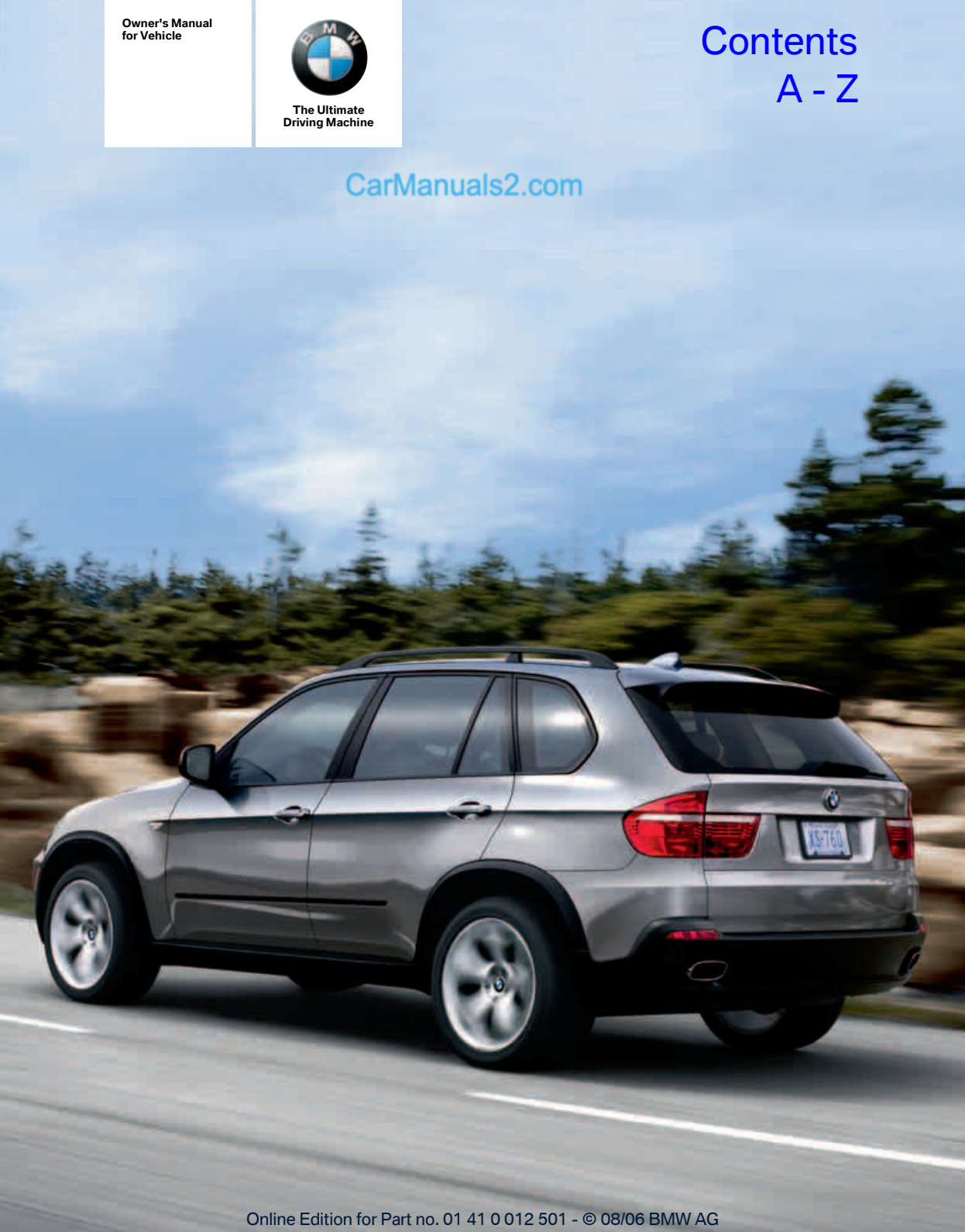
Owner's Manual
for Vehicle

The Ultimate
Driving Machine

Contents
A - Z

CarManuals2.com



Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

X5 3.0si
X5 4.8i

Owner's Manual for Vehicle

Congratulations, and thank you for choosing a BMW.

Thorough familiarity with your vehicle will provide you with enhanced control and security when you drive it. We therefore have this request:

Please take the time to read this Owner's Manual and familiarize yourself with the information that we have compiled for you before starting off in your new vehicle. It contains important data and instructions intended to assist you in gaining maximum use and satisfaction from your BMW's unique range of technical features. The manual also contains information on maintenance designed to enhance operating safety and contribute to maintaining the value of your BMW throughout an extended service life.

This manual is supplemented by a Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models or a Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models.

We wish you an enjoyable driving experience.

BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

BMW recommends Castrol

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

© 2006 Bayerische Motoren Werke
Aktiengesellschaft
Munich, Germany
Reprinting, including excerpts,
only with the written consent of
BMW AG, Munich.
Order No. 01 41 0 012 501
US English IX/06, 06 09 500
Printed in Germany
Printed on environmentally friendly paper,
bleached without chlorine, suitable for recycling.

CarManuals2.com

Contents

The fastest way to find specific topics is to use the index, refer to page 250.

Using this Owner's Manual
4 Notes
7 Reporting safety defects

At a glance
10 Cockpit
16 iDrive
23 Voice command system

Controls
28 Opening and closing
40 Adjusting
52 Transporting children safely
56 Driving
67 Everything under control
80 Technology for comfort, convenience and safety
97 Lamps
101 Climate
110 Practical interior accessories

Driving tips
122 Things to remember when driving

Navigation
130 Starting navigation system
131 Destination entry
143 Destination guidance
151 What to do if ...

Entertainment
154 On/Off and settings
158 Radio
162 Satellite radio
165 CD player and CD changer
171 External audio device
172 DVD system in rear

Communications
188 Telephoning
202 BMW Assist

Mobility
212 Refueling
214 Wheels and tires
222 Under the hood
226 Maintenance
228 Replacing components
236 Giving and receiving assistance

Reference
242 Technical data
245 Short commands of voice command system
250 Everything from A to Z

CarManuals2.com

Notes

Using this Owner's Manual

We have made every effort to ensure that you are able to find what you need in this Owner's Manual as quickly as possible. The fastest way to find specific topics is to refer to the detailed index at the back of the manual. If you wish to gain an initial overview of your vehicle, you will find this in the first chapter.

Should you sell your BMW some day, please remember to hand over the Owner's Manual as well; it is an important component of your vehicle.

Additional sources of information

If you have additional questions, your BMW Sports Activity Vehicle Center is always happy to advise you.

You can find information on BMW, e.g. on technology, on the Internet at www.bmwusa.com.

Symbols used

CarManuals2.com

Indicates precautions that must be followed precisely in order to avoid the possibility of personal injury and serious damage to the vehicle.

Indicates information that will assist you in gaining the optimum benefit from your vehicle and enable you to care more effectively for your vehicle.

Refers to measures that can be taken to help protect the environment.

◀ Marks the end of a specific item of information.

* Indicates special equipment, country-specific equipment and optional extras, as well as equipment and functions not yet available at the time of printing.

"..." Identifies Control Display texts used to select individual functions.

›...‹ Verbal instructions to use with the voice command system.

››...‹‹ Identifies the answers generated by the voice command system.

Symbols on vehicle components

Indicates that you should consult the relevant section of this Owner's Manual for information on a particular part or assembly.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

The individual vehicle

When purchasing your BMW, you have decided in favor of a model with individualized equipment and features. This Owner's Manual describes the entire array of options and equipment available with a specific BMW model.

Please bear in mind that the manual may contain information on accessories and equipment that you have not specified for your own vehicle. Sections describing options and special equipment are marked by asterisks * to assist you in identifying possible differences between the descriptions in this manual and your own vehicle's equipment.

If equipment in your BMW is not described in this Owner's Manual, please refer to the accompanying Supplementary Owner's Manuals.

Editorial notice

BMW pursues a policy of continuous, ongoing development that is conceived to ensure that our vehicles continue to embody the highest quality and safety standards combined with advanced, state-of-the-art technology. For this reason, it is possible that the features described in this Owner's Manual could differ from those on your vehicle.

For your own safety

Maintenance and repairs

Advanced technology, e.g. the use of modern materials and high-performance electronics, requires specially adapted maintenance and repair methods. Therefore, have corresponding work on your BMW performed only by your BMW Sports Activity Vehicle Center or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel. If this work is not carried out properly, there is a danger of subsequent damage and related safety hazards.◀

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Parts and accessories

For your own safety, use genuine parts and accessories approved by BMW.
When you purchase accessories tested and approved by BMW and Genuine BMW Parts, you simultaneously acquire the assurance that they have been thoroughly tested by BMW to ensure optimum performance when installed on your vehicle.
BMW warrants these parts to be free from defects in material and workmanship.
BMW will not accept any liability for damage resulting from installation of parts and accessories not approved by BMW.
BMW cannot test every product made by other manufacturers to verify if it can be used on a BMW safely and without risk to either the vehicle, its operation or its occupants.
Genuine BMW Parts, BMW Accessories and other products approved by BMW, together with professional advice on using these items, are available from all BMW Sports Activity Vehicle Centers.
Installation and operation of non-BMW approved accessories such as alarms, radios, amplifiers, radar detectors, wheels, suspension components, brake dust shields, telephones, including operation of any mobile phone from within the vehicle without using an externally mounted antenna, or transceiver equipment, for instance, CBs, walkie-talkies, ham radios or similar accessories, may cause extensive damage to the vehicle, compromise its safety, interfere with the vehicle's electrical system or affect the validity of the BMW Limited Warranty. Refer to your BMW Sports Activity Vehicle Center for additional information.◀

Maintenance, replacement, or repair of the emission control devices and systems may be performed by any automotive repair establishment or individual using any certified automotive part.◀

California Proposition 65 Warning

California laws require us to issue the following warning:

Engine exhaust and a wide variety of automobile components and parts, including components found in the interior furnishings in a vehicle, contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.
Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Wash your hands after handling.
Used engine oil contains chemicals that have caused cancer in laboratory animals. Always protect your skin by washing thoroughly with soap and water.◀

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Service and warranty

We recommend that you read this publication thoroughly.

Your BMW is covered by the following warranties:

CarManuals2.com

- New Vehicle Limited Warranty
- Rust Perforation Limited Warranty
- Federal Emissions System Defect Warranty
- Federal Emissions Performance Warranty
- California Emission Control System Limited Warranty

Detailed information about these warranties is listed in the Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models or in the Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models.

Reporting safety defects

For US customers

The following applies only to vehicles owned and operated in the US.

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration, NHTSA, in addition to notifying BMW of North America, LLC, P.O. Box 1227, Westwood, New Jersey 07675-1227, Telephone 1-800-831-1117.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or BMW of North America, LLC.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to http://www.safercar.gov; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 400 Seventh Street, SW., Washington, DC 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.safercar.gov

For Canadian customers

Canadian customers who wish to report a safety-related defect to Transport Canada, Defect Investigations and Recalls, may call 1-800-333-0510 toll-free from anywhere in Canada or 1-613-993-9851 from the Ottawa region and from other countries, or contact Transport Canada by mail at: Transport Canada, ASFAD, Place de Ville, Tower C, 330 Sparks Street, Ottawa, ON, K1A 0N5. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.tc.gc.ca

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

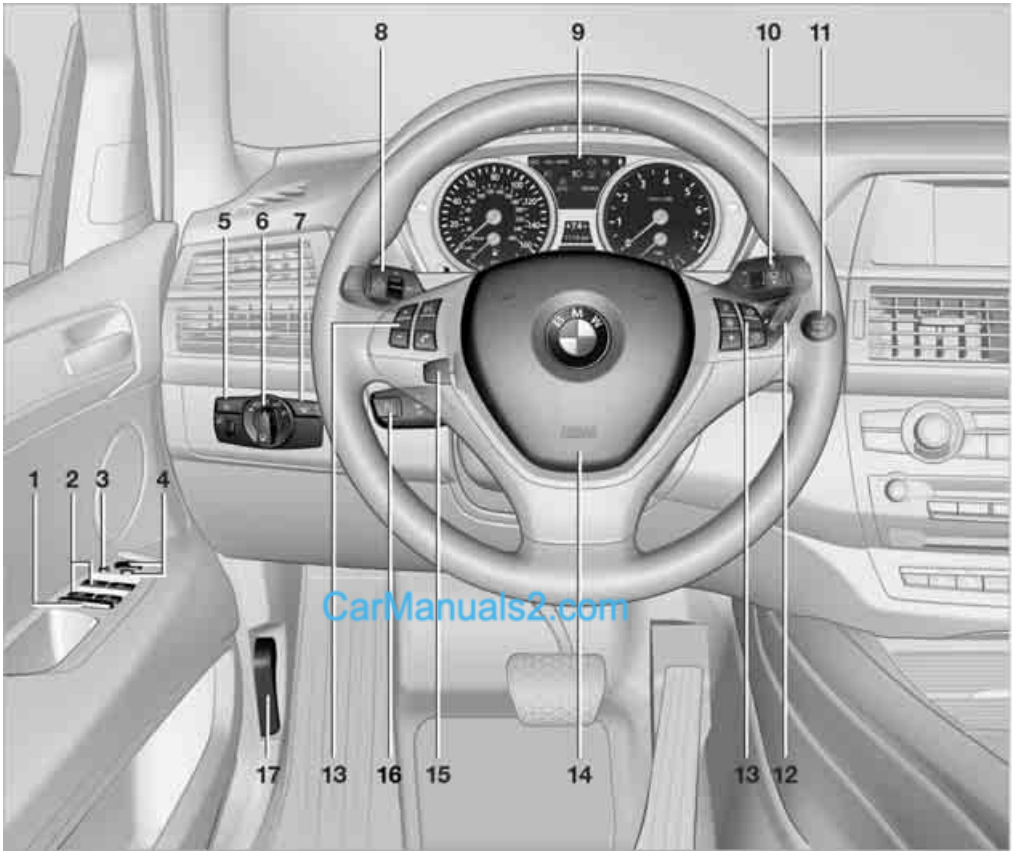
At a glance

This overview of buttons, switches and displays is intended to familiarize you with your vehicle's operating environment. The section will also assist you in becoming acquainted with the control concepts and options available for operating the various systems.

CarManuals2.com

Cockpit

Around the steering wheel: controls and displays



1 Rear window safety switch 38

2 Opening and closing windows 37

3 Folding exterior mirrors in and out* 48

4 Adjusting exterior mirrors 48
Automatic curb monitor* 49

5 Instrument lighting 99

Fog lamps* 99

6 Parking lamps 97

Low beams 97

Automatic headlamp control* 97
Adaptive Head Light* 98

7 Head-Up Display* 94

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

8 Turn signals 62

High beams, headlamp flasher 99

Roadside parking lamps* 99

Time, date, outside temperature, Check Control 67, 75

BC Computer 69

9 Instrument cluster 12

10 Windshield wipers 63

Rain sensor 63

Rear window wiper 64

11 START STOP ENGINE Starting/stopping engine and switching ignition on/off 56

12 Ignition lock 56

13 Buttons on steering wheel

Telephone*:

- Press: accepting and ending call, starting dialing* for selected phone number and redialing if no phone number is selected
- Press longer: redialing

Volume

Activating/deactivating voice command system* 23

Changing radio station

Selecting music track

Scrolling in phone book and in lists with stored phone numbers

CarManuals2.com

Individually programmable* 50

Individually programmable* 50

Steering wheel heating* 50

14 Horn, entire surface

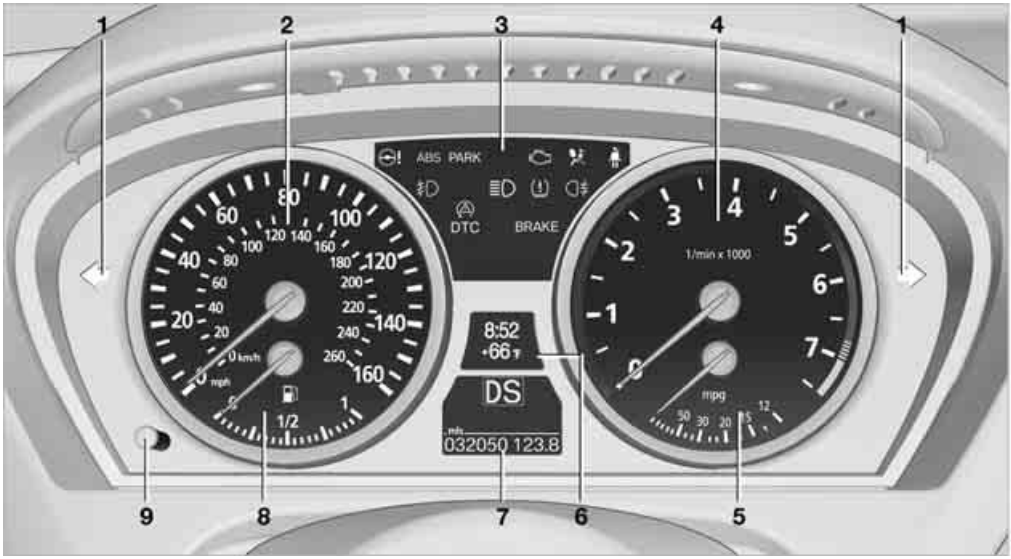
15 Steering wheel adjustment 49

16 Cruise control* 64

17 Releasing hood 222

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Instrument cluster



1 Indicator lamps for turn signals
2 Speedometer
3 Indicator and warning lamps 13
4 Tachometer 68
5 Energy Control 68
6 Display for
- ▷ Clock/date 67
- ▷ Outside temperature 67
- ▷ Indicator and warning lamps 74
- ▷ Speed of cruise control* 64

7 Display for
- ▷ Odometer and trip odometer 67
- ▷ Computer 69
- ▷ Date and remaining travel distance for service requirements 71
- ▷ Automatic transmission positions 59
- ▷ HDC Hill Descent Control 85
- ▷ ⚠ Check Control message present 74
- ▷ Adaptive Drive* 86

8 Fuel gauge 68
9 Resetting trip odometer 67
Displaying service requirement 67

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Indicator and warning lamps

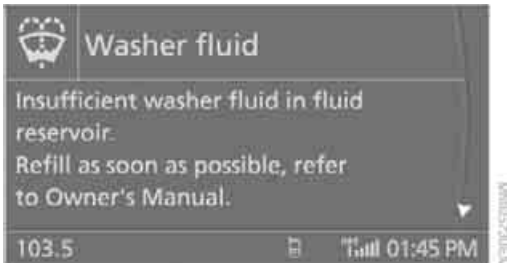
The concept

The indicator and warning lamps can light up in different combinations and colors.

Some lamps are tested for proper function by briefly lighting up during starting of the engine or when the ignition is switched on.

Explanatory text messages

Text messages at the bottom edge of the Control Display explain the meaning of the displayed indicator and warning lamps.



Additional information, e.g. on the cause of a malfunction and on the corresponding need to take action can be displayed via the Check Control, refer to page 74.

In the case of corresponding urgency, this information is displayed immediately when the related lamp lights up.

Indicator lamps without text messages

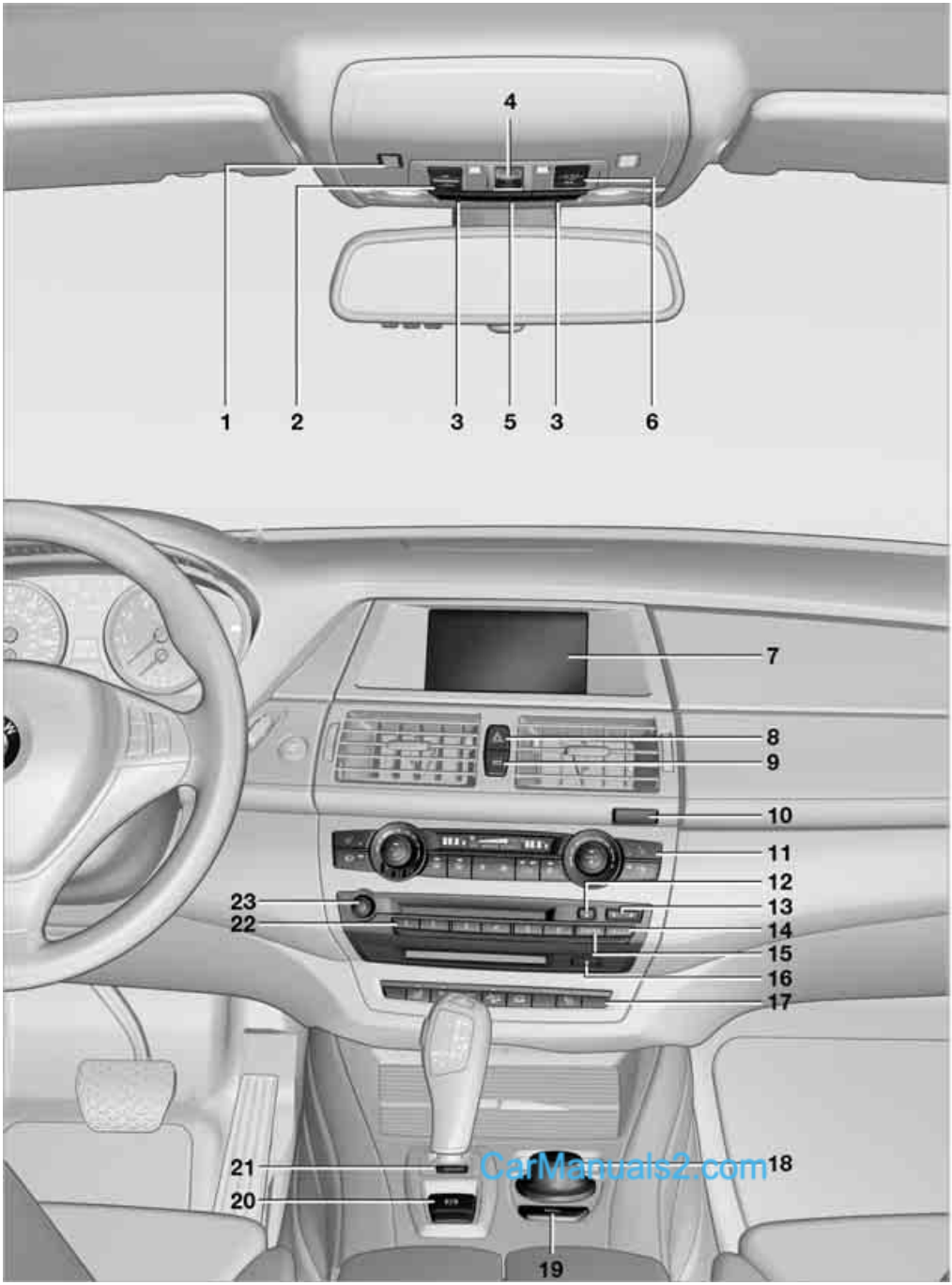
The following indicator lamps indicate that certain functions are activated:

PARK	With parking brake set 58
(P)	With parking brake set for Canadian models
	Fog lamps* 99
DTC	DTC Dynamic Traction Control 85
	High beams/headlamp flasher 99
	Lamp flashes: DSC or DTC controls the drive and braking forces for maintaining vehicle stability 84

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Around the center console: controls and displays



Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

1 Microphone for handsfree mode for telephone* and for voice command system* 23

2 Initiating an emergency call 236

3 Reading lamps 100

4 Panorama glass sunroof* 38

5 Interior lamps 100

6 Passenger airbag status lamp 92

7 Control Display 16
Displays for menu navigation

8 Hazard warning flashers

9 Central locking system 29

10 Opening glove compartment 113

11 Automatic climate control 102

Manual air distribution 103

AUTO Automatic air distribution and volume 102

Cooling function 104

A AUC Automatic recirculated-air control 105

MAX Maximum cooling 104

Air volume 103
Residual heat utilization 105

Defrosting windows and removing condensation 103

Rear window defroster 103

Seat heating* 47

Active seat ventilation* 47

12 Ejecting audio CD

13 Changing

- ▷ radio station 154
- ▷ track 154

14 Selecting radio, CD and CD changer

15 Selecting AM or FM waveband

16 Ejecting navigation DVD with Professional navigation system* 130

17 Opening liftgate 33

Active seat* 48

P PDC Park Distance Control* 80
Backup camera* 81

DTC DTC Dynamic Traction Control 85

HDC Hill Descent Control 85

18 Controller 16
Turn, press or move horizontally in four directions

19 Opening start menu on Control Display 17

20 Parking brake 57

21 Adaptive Drive 86

22 Programmable memory/direct selection buttons 21

23 Switching Entertainment sound output on/off and adjusting volume 154

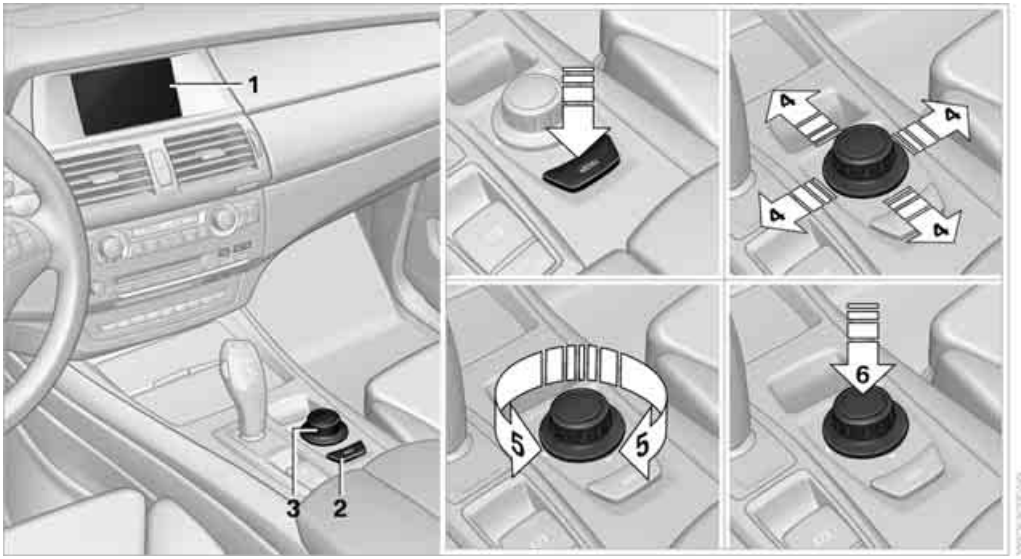
CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

iDrive

iDrive combines the functions of a large number of switches. This allows these functions to be operated from a central position. The following section provides an introduction to basic menu navigation. The control of the individual functions is described in connection with the relevant equipment.

Controls



1 Control Display

2 **MENU** button
Opening start menu

3 Controller
With the controller you can select menu items and make settings:

- ▷ move in four directions, arrows **4**
- ▷ turn, arrow **5**
- ▷ press, arrow **6**

⚠ To avoid posing an unnecessary hazard due to inattention, both to your own vehicle's occupants and to other road users: never attempt to use the controls or make entries unless traffic and road conditions allow.◀

Carmanuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Menu overview

Communication

- Telephone*
- BMW Assist* or TeleService*

CarManuals2.com

Navigation or onboard information

- Navigation system*
- Onboard information, e.g. for displaying the average fuel consumption

Entertainment

- Radio
- CD player and CD changer*
- External audio device

Climate

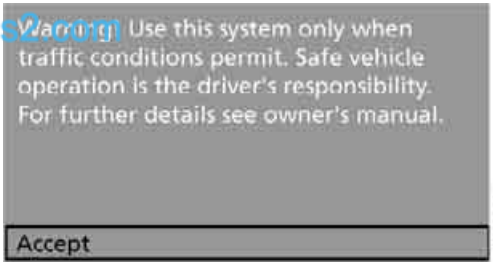
- Vent settings
- Seat heater distribution*
- Automatic programs
- Parked car ventilation*

i menu

- Switching off Control Display
- Tone and display settings
- Settings for traffic information*
- Settings for your vehicle, e.g. for the central locking system
- Display of maintenance intervals and deadlines for legally mandated inspections
- Settings for telephone*

Operating principle

From radio readiness, refer to page 56, the following message is shown on the Control Display:



To hide the message:
Press the controller.
This displays the start menu.

On vehicles with a single drive, the message automatically disappears after approx. 10 seconds.

Start menu

You can call up all the functions of iDrive using five menu items.

Opening start menu

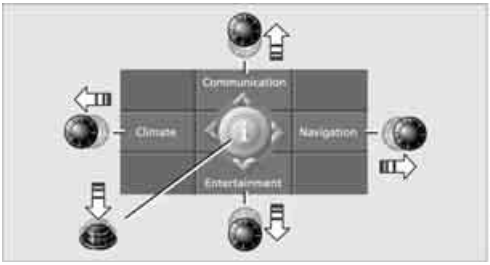
Press the **MENU** button.

To open the start menu from the i menu:

Press the **MENU** button twice.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Opening menu items of start menu



With the start menu you can open the menu items Communication, Navigation, Entertainment and Climate by moving the controller to the left, right, front or rear.

You can open the i menu by pressing the controller.

Comfort opening of menu items

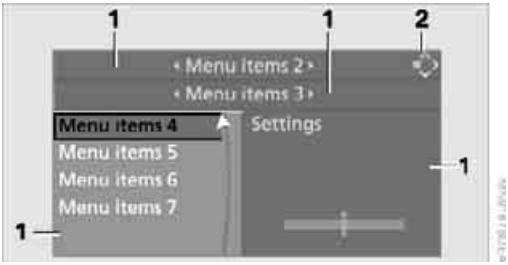
Comfort opening offers you:

- ▷ Opening of a menu item of the start menu in the last display shown
- ▷ Direct changing between Communication, Navigation, Entertainment and Climate without pressing the **MENU** button

CarManuals2.com

For this purpose, move the controller in the corresponding direction and hold it for longer than approx. 2 seconds.

Displays in menu



1 Each menu is divided into fields.
The respective active field is highlighted.

2 A symbol indicates the last selected menu item of the start menu:

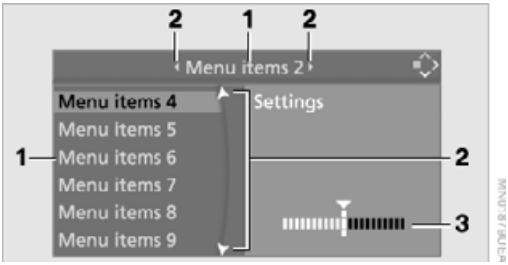
Communication

Navigation or onboard information

Entertainment

Climate

i menu



1 Menu items are usually grouped in horizontal or vertical lists.

2 In these lists, arrows indicate the possibility of accessing other menu items that are not currently visible.

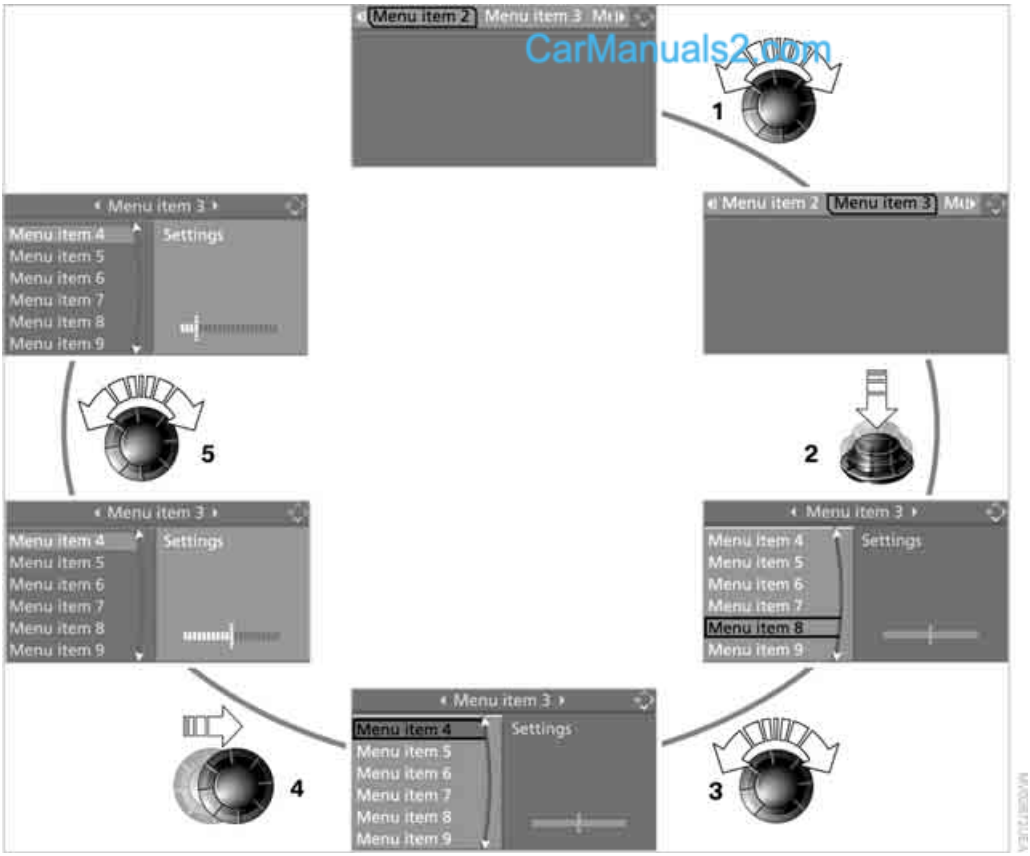
3 Settings are displayed graphically or numerically.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Operating principle at a glance

Basic operation via iDrive is described in this view.

You can view the individual steps under Settings on Control Display, Brightness of Control Display, refer to page 78.



CarManuals2.com

1 Selecting menu item:
- ▷ Turn the controller; the highlight moves
- ▷ Menu items shown in white can be selected by highlighting

2 Activating menu item:
- ▷ Press the controller
- ▷ New menu items are displayed or the function is carried out

3 Selecting menu item: refer to 1

4 Changing between fields:
- ▷ Briefly move the controller left, right, forward or back
- ▷ Release controller
- ▷ Active field appears lighter

5 Adjusting settings:
- ▷ Turn controller
- ▷ Graphic display, numerical value or text displays can be changed
- ▷ Confirmation by changing field

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Status information

1 Display for:
   - ▷ Entertainment:
     Radio, CD
   - ▷ Telephone* in "Communication":
     Name of linked mobile phone, network search or no network
   - ▷ "BMW Assist"*:
     Existing voice connection with a service from BMW Assist
2 Entertainment sound output off
3 Display for traffic information*, TI:
   Traffic information for the navigation system can be received and transmission is switched on
4 Display for:
   - ▷ New entries present in "Missed calls"*
   - ▷ Roaming active
5 Telephoning* possible if the mobile phone is logged-on in the vehicle
   Mobile phone network with strong reception, display dependent on mobile phone
6 Time

Other displays:
The status information is temporarily hidden when there are Check Control instructions or inputs via the voice command system*.

Assistance window*

Additional information can be displayed in the assistance window:

- ▷ The computer or the trip computer*
- ▷ The arrow or map view with a navigation system*
- ▷ The current position

Selecting display

1. Move the controller to the right to change to the assistance window and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

2. Select a menu item.
3. Press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Switching assistance window off/on

1. Move the controller to the right to change to the assistance window and press the controller.
2. Select "Assist. window off" and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

To switch on, change to the assistance window and press the controller.

Switching Control Display off/on

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Display off" and press the controller.

To switch on, press the controller.

Programmable memory/ direct selection buttons

You can store and run certain functions of iDrive on the direct selection buttons:

- ▷ Destinations of navigation
- ▷ Entertainment:
  - ▷ radio station
  - ▷ CD
  - ▷ CD compartment of CD changer
  - ▷ AUX
- ▷ Telephone: phone numbers

Saving function

Navigation

1. Select navigation destination, e.g. in the destination list or the address book.
2. Press the 1 ... 6 button longer than 2 seconds.

Special features:

- ▷ With the destination guidance system and the map view started, the current destination is stored.
- ▷ During destination entry via a map, the coordinates at the cursor are stored, not the current destination.

Communication

1. Enter the phone number or select it in a list of the stored phone numbers, e.g. of the A-Z list.
2. Press the 1 ... 6 button longer than 2 seconds.

If a name is assigned to the phone number, the name will also be stored.

Entertainment

The source being played at the time of saving, e.g. a radio station or a certain CD of the CD player, is stored in the Entertainment menu, and not what is selected with controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

1. Select the desired function, e.g. radio station or CD.
2. Press the 1 ... 6 button longer than 2 seconds.

If the vehicle is equipped with two drives, the current track is stored for CDs with compressed audio files.◀

Running function

Press the 1 ... 6 button.

The function is run immediately. This means, for example, that when a phone number is selected, the connection is also established, or when a navigation destination is called up, destination guidance is started.

Displaying button assignment

You can display the assignment of the buttons by touching them with your finger. Please do not wear gloves when doing so. Touching with an object, e.g. a pen, does not function.

Displaying short info

Touch the 1 ... 6 button.

The assignment of the buttons is displayed.

CarManuals2.com

Navigation destination

Entertainment source

Phone number

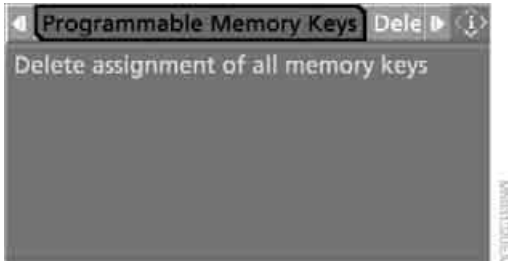
Not assigned

Displaying detailed information

Touch and hold the 1 ... 6 button.

Deleting button assignments

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Vehicle / Tires" and press the controller.
5. Select "Programmable Memory Keys" and press the controller.



6. Select "Delete assignment of all memory keys" and press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Voice command system*

The concept

The voice command system allows you to control operation of various vehicle systems without ever removing your hands from the steering wheel.

Individual menu items on the Control Display can be spoken as commands. This frees you of having to use the controller.

The voice command system transforms your oral commands into control signals for the selected systems and provides support in the form of instructions or questions.

The voice command system uses a special microphone located in the area of the interior rearview mirror, refer to page 14.

Precondition

Via iDrive, set the language that applies for the voice command system in order to enable identification of the spoken commands. To set the language of iDrive, refer to page 79.

Symbols in Owner's Manual

›...‹ Say the specified commands word for word.
››...‹‹ Indicates responses of the voice command system.

Voice commands

Activating voice command system

1. Press the button on the steering wheel.
   This symbol on the Control Display and an acoustic signal tell you that the voice command system can respond to commands.

2. Say the command.
   The command is displayed on the Control Display.

This symbol is shown on the Control Display when you can input additional commands.
If no other commands are possible, then operate the equipment via iDrive.

Terminating or canceling voice command system

Press the button on the steering wheel
or

›Cancel‹

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Commands

Having possible commands read aloud

You can have the system read aloud the possible commands related to the selected menu item on the Control Display.
To have the system list the possible commands:

›Options‹

For example, if you have selected "CD", the system will read aloud the possible commands for operating the CD player and the CD changer*.

Opening help

›Help‹

Using alternative commands

There are often a number of commands to run a function, e.g.:

›Radio on‹ or ›Turn radio on‹

Running functions directly with short commands

With short commands you can carry out certain functions directly, regardless of which menu item is selected, refer to page 245.

Opening start menu

›Main menu‹

Example: selecting a track

1. Switch on Entertainment sound output if necessary.
2. Press the button on the steering wheel.
3. ›Entertainment‹
   The system says:
   ››Entertainment‹‹

4. ›CD‹
   The system says:
   ››CD drive switched on‹‹

5. Press the button on the steering wheel.
6. Select track, e.g.:
   ›Track 1‹
   The system says:
   ››Track 1‹‹

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Notes

The mobile phone can also be operated with voice commands, refer to page 197.◀

For voice commands, bear the following in mind:

- Say the commands and numbers smoothly and at normal volume, avoiding excessive emphases and pauses. This also applies to spelling when entering the destination.
- Always issue commands in the language of the voice command system.
- When selecting a radio station, use the common pronunciation of the station name.
- For entries in the voice-activated phone book, only use names in the language of the voice command system and no abbreviations.
- Keep the doors, windows and panorama glass sunroof* closed to prevent interference from ambient noise.
- Avoid making other noise in the vehicle while speaking.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Controls

This chapter is intended to provide you with information for complete control of your vehicle. Its extensive array of features and accessories, both for driving and for your own safety, comfort and convenience, are described here.

CarManuals2.com

Opening and closing

Keys/remote control

1 Remote control with integrated key

2 Spare key

3 Adapter for spare key

Remote control with integrated key

Each remote control contains a battery which is automatically charged in the ignition lock while driving. Drive a longer distance with each remote control at least twice a year to keep the battery charged. For comfort access*, the remote control contains a replaceable battery, refer to page 37.

CarManuals2.com

Depending on which remote control is detected by the vehicle during unlocking, different settings are called up and carried out in the vehicle, refer to Personal Profile, page 28.

Information on the required maintenance is also stored in the remote control, refer to Service data in remote control, page 226.

Integrated key

Press button **1** to unlock the key.

The integrated key fits the following locks:

- ▷ Driver's door, refer to page 31
- ▷ Lockable floor panel flap* in cargo bay

New remote controls

To obtain additional or replace lost keys, new remote controls with an integrated key are available at your BMW Sports Activity Vehicle Center.

Spare key

Store the spare key in a safe place such as your wallet. This key is not intended for regular use.

The spare key and integrated key fit the same locks.

Adapter for spare key

The adapter is required so that the vehicle can be started with the spare key or radio readiness can be switched on.

Push the spare key into the adapter before use.

Personal Profile

The concept

You can set a number of functions of your BMW individually according to your preferences. Personal Profile ensures that most of these settings are stored for the remote control currently in use without you having to do anything. When the vehicle is unlocked, the corresponding

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

remote control is detected and the settings stored for it are called up and carried out.

This means that you will always find your BMW set to your own personal settings even if another person with his/her own remote control and settings has used the vehicle since the last time you drove it. The individual settings are stored for a maximum of three remote controls.

Personal Profile settings

Details on the settings are provided on the specified pages.

- When unlocking with the remote control, either unlock only the driver's door or the entire vehicle, refer to page 30
- Locking the vehicle after a short time or after starting off, refer to page 32
- Assigning the programmable buttons* on the steering wheel, refer to page 50
- Settings for the display on the Control Display:
  - Brightness of the Control Display, refer to page 78
  - Measuring units for consumption, route/distances, temperature, and pressure, refer to page 79
  - Language on Control Display, refer to page 79
  - 12h/24h mode of the clock, refer to page 78
  - Date format, refer to page 78
- Showing optical warning for PDC Park Distance Control*, refer to page 81
- Selection, brightness and position of display in Head-Up Display*, refer to page 94
- For settings of automatic climate control, refer to page 102
- Positions of driver's seat, exterior mirrors, and steering wheel*, refer to page 42
- With Adaptive Drive*, last selected chassis and suspension tuning setting, refer to page 86
- Audio sources, volume and tone settings, refer to page 155
- Radio, displaying stored stations, refer to page 158
- Telephone, setting volume, refer to pages 192, 198
- Pathway lighting, refer to page 97, and daytime running lamps, refer to page 98
- Triple turn signal activation, refer to page 62
- With backup camera*, selection of functions, refer to page 82 and type of display, refer to page 83
- With programmable memory/direct selection buttons, selection of stored functions, refer to page 21

Central locking system

The concept

The central locking system is ready for operation whenever the driver's door is closed.

The system simultaneously engages and releases the locks on the following:

- Doors
- Liftgate
- Fuel filler door

Operating from outside

- via the remote control
- via the door lock
- with comfort access* via the door handles

At the same time, the anti-theft system is also operated. It prevents the doors from being unlocked using the lock buttons or door handles. The interior lamps and the courtesy lamps* are also switched on and off with the remote control. The alarm system is armed/disarmed at the same time.
You can find more detailed information on the alarm system on page 34.

CarManuals2.com

Operating from inside

Via the button for central locking, refer to page 32. The fuel filler door is not locked.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

In an accident of sufficient severity, the central locking system automatically unlocks the vehicle. In addition, the hazard warning flashers and interior lamps come on.

CarManuals2.com

Opening and closing: from outside

Using remote control

Persons or animals left unattended in a parked vehicle can lock the doors from the inside. Always take along the remote control when leaving the vehicle so that the vehicle can then be opened from the outside.◀

Unlocking

Press the button.
This unlocks the vehicle.

You can set how the vehicle is unlocked. The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

iDrive, for explanation of concept, refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Vehicle / Tires" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Door locks" is selected and press the controller.

6. Select "Central locking" and press the controller.
7. Select "Unlock button" and press the controller.
8. Select a menu item:
   - ▷ "All doors"
     Press the button once to unlock the entire vehicle.
   - ▷ "Driver's door only"
     Press the button once to unlock only the driver's door and the fuel filler door. Press the button twice to unlock the entire vehicle.

9. Press the controller.

Comfort opening

Press the button longer. The windows and the panorama glass sunroof* are opened.

Locking

Press the LOCK button.

Switching on interior lamps

With vehicle locked:
Press the LOCK button.
You can also use this function to locate your vehicle in parking garages etc.

Panic mode*

You can also trigger the alarm system in case of danger:

Press the button for at least 3 seconds.

Switch off alarm: press any button.

Unlocking liftgate

Press the button for approx. 1 second.

The liftgate will open slightly, regardless of whether it was previously locked or unlocked.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

During opening, the liftgate pivots back and up. Ensure that adequate clearance is available before opening.
To prevent accidentally locking yourself out, never lay the remote control in the cargo bay. A previously locked liftgate is also locked again after closing.◀

If pointed or sharp-edged objects could strike the rear window while driving, be sure to provide protection around all edges. Failure to do so could result in damage to the heating conductors of the rear window.◀

Setting confirmation signals

You can vary or also deactivate the confirmation signals for locking or unlocking.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Vehicle / Tires" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Door locks" is selected and press the controller.
6. Select "Confirmation" and press the controller.

7. Select the desired signal.
8. Press the controller.
   The signal is activated.

Malfunctions

The remote control may malfunction due to local radio waves. Should the remote control fail to operate due to interference of this kind, unlock and lock the vehicle via the door lock using a key.

If it is no longer possible to lock the vehicle using the remote control, then the battery is discharged. Use this remote control during an extended drive; this will recharge the battery, refer to page 28.

For US owners only

The transmitter and receiver units comply with part 15 of the FCC/Federal Communication Commission regulations. Operation is governed by the following:

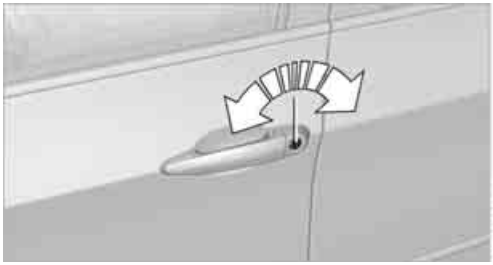
FCC ID:
LX8766S
LX8766E
LX8CAS
LX8CAS2

Compliance statement:
This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- This device must not cause harmful interference, and
- this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Any unauthorized modifications or changes to these devices could void the user's authority to operate this equipment.◀

Using door lock



When unlocking

1. Turning the key once unlocks the driver's door and the fuel filler door.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

2. Turning the key a second time unlocks the remaining doors and the liftgate.

Comfort operation

You also operate the windows and the panorama glass sunroof* from the driver's door lock.

CarManuals2.com

Turn and hold the key in the positions for unlocking or locking.

⚠ Watch during the closing process to be sure that no one is injured. Releasing the key stops the operation.◀

Manual operation

In the event of an electrical malfunction, you can turn a key all the way to the right or left in the door lock to lock or unlock the driver's door.

Opening and closing: from inside

This button serves to unlock or lock doors and the liftgate, with the front doors closed. It does not activate the anti-theft system. The fuel filler door remains unlocked.

You can also set the situations in which the vehicle is locked.

iDrive, for explanation of concept, refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Vehicle / Tires" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Door locks" is selected and press the controller.
6. Select "Central locking" and press the controller.

7. Select a menu item:
   - ▷ "Relock door if not opened"
     The central locking system automatically locks the vehicle after a short time when no door has been opened.
   - ▷ "Lock after driving"
     The central locking system automatically locks the vehicle as soon as you start to drive.
8. Press the controller.
   ✓ The setting is selected.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Unlocking and opening doors

- ▷ Either unlock the doors together with the button for the central locking system and then pull the door handle above the armrest or
- ▷ pull on the door handle of each door twice: the first time unlocks the door, the second time opens it.

Locking

- ▷ Use the central locking button to lock all of the doors simultaneously, or
- ▷ press down the lock button of a door.
  To prevent you from being locked out, the open driver's door cannot be locked using the lock button.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Persons or animals left unattended in a parked vehicle can lock the doors from the inside. Always take along the remote control when leaving the vehicle so that the vehicle can then be opened from the outside.◀

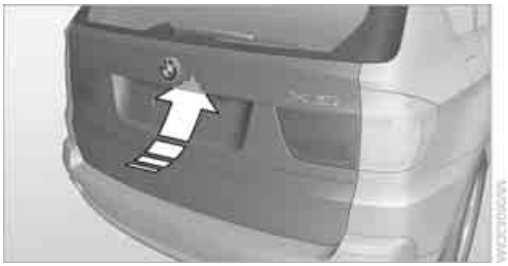
Liftgate

During opening, the liftgate pivots back and up. Ensure that adequate clearance is available before opening.◀

Opening from inside

Press the button: the liftgate opens somewhat unless it has been locked.

Opening from outside

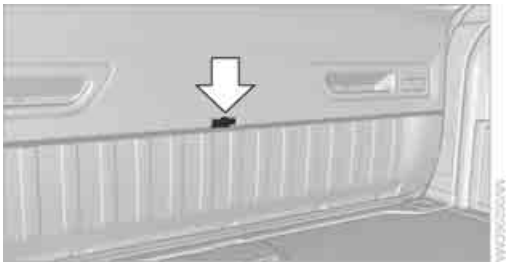


Press the button on the liftgate or the button on the remote control for approx. 1 second: The liftgate opens somewhat. It can be swung upward.

Opening manually

In case of an electrical malfunction:

1. From the cargo bay, press out the handle in the liftgate, refer to arrow, with a screwdriver and pull. The liftgate is unlocked.



2. Open the liftgate and press in the handle.

The liftgate is locked again as soon as it is closed.

Closing

Make sure that the closing path of the liftgate is clear, otherwise injuries may result.◀

CarManuals2.com

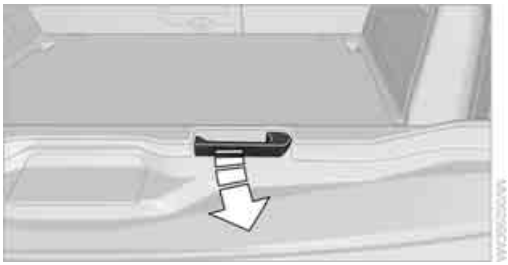
The handle recesses on the interior trim of the liftgate make it easier to pull down.

If pointed or sharp-edged objects could strike the rear window while driving, be sure to provide protection around all edges. Failure to do so could result in damage to the heating conductors of the rear window.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Tailgate

Opening



Pull lever.
You can fold the tailgate down.

When opened, the tailgate can accept loads of up to 550 lbs./250 kg. When the vehicle is stationary you may, for example, utilize the tailgate as a seat or as a loading platform for luggage or recreation gear.

Closing

Fold the tailgate up and press closed.

Alarm system

The concept

The vehicle alarm system responds:

- When a door, the hood or the liftgate is opened
- To movements in the vehicle: interior motion sensor, refer to page 35
- To changes in the vehicle's tilt if someone attempts to steal the wheels or tow the vehicle
- To interruptions in battery voltage

Unauthorized operations are briefly signaled by the alarm system:

- with an acoustic alarm
- by switching on the hazard warning flashers
- by flashing the high beams

CarManuals2.com

Arming and disarming alarm system

When you lock or unlock the vehicle, either with the remote control or at the door lock, the alarm system is armed or disarmed at the same time.

The liftgate can also be opened with the system armed with the button on the remote control, refer to page 30. When the liftgate is closed, it is locked and monitored again.

Switching off alarm

- Unlock the vehicle using the remote control, refer to page 30.
- Insert the remote control all the way into the ignition lock.

Indicator lamp displays

- The indicator lamp under the interior rear-view mirror flashes continuously: the system is armed.
- The indicator lamp flashes after locking: the doors, hood or liftgate are not properly closed. Even if you do not close the alerted area, the system begins to monitor the remaining areas, and the indicator lamp flashes continuously after approx. 10 seconds. However, the interior motion sensor is not activated.
- The indicator lamp goes out after unlocking: your vehicle has not been disturbed while you were away.
- The indicator lamp flashes after unlocking until the remote control is inserted into the ignition lock, however for a maximum of approx. 5 minutes: your vehicle has been disturbed while you were away.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Tilt alarm sensor

The tilt of the vehicle is monitored. The alarm system reacts, e.g. in case of an attempted wheel theft or towing.

Interior motion sensor

In order for the interior motion sensor to function properly, the windows and panorama glass sunroof* must be completely closed.

Avoiding unintentional alarms

The tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor may be switched off at the same time. This prevents unintentional alarms, e.g. in the following situations:

- ▷ In stacking garages
- ▷ When transporting on car-carrying trains, by sea or on a trailer
- ▷ When animals are to remain in the vehicle

Switching off tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor

Press the LOCK button on the remote control again as soon as the vehicle is locked.

CarManuals2.com

The indicator lamp lights up briefly and then flashes continuously. The tilt alarm sensor and the interior motion sensor are switched off until the next time the vehicle is unlocked and subsequently locked again.

Comfort access*

Comfort access enables you to access your vehicle without having to hold the remote control in your hand. It is sufficient to carry the remote control with you, e.g. in your hand or jacket pocket. The vehicle automatically detects the related remote control in the immediate vicinity or in the interior.

Comfort access supports the following functions:

- ▷ Unlocking/locking vehicle
- ▷ Comfort closing
- ▷ Opening liftgate
- ▷ Starting engine

Functional requirement

- ▷ The vehicle can only be unlocked if the vehicle detects that the remote control carried is not located in the vehicle interior.
- ▷ The next unlocking and locking cycle is not possible until after approx. 2 seconds.
- ▷ The engine can only be started if the vehicle detects that the remote control is located in the vehicle interior.

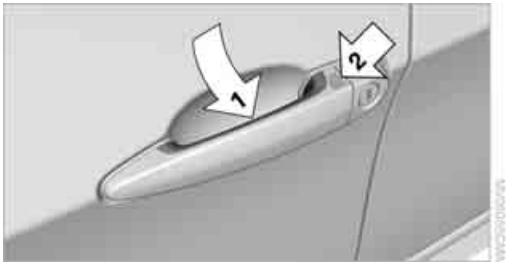
Comparison with ordinary remote control

You can control the functions mentioned previously with the comfort access or by pressing the buttons on the remote control. Therefore, please familiarize yourself with the information on opening and closing beginning on page 28 beforehand.

The special features when using comfort access are described in the following.

▷ Should a short delay occur when opening or closing the windows or the panorama glass sunroof*, the system is checking whether a remote control is located in the vehicle. Please repeat opening or closing if necessary.◀

Unlocking



Completely grasp a door handle, arrow **1**. This corresponds to pressing the button.

Locking

Touch the area highlighted in the picture, arrow **2**, with your finger for approx. 1 second.

This corresponds to pressing the LOCK button.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Please make sure that all electronic systems/consumers are switched off before locking to save the battery.◀

Comfort closing

Hold a finger or the back of a hand on the surface, arrow **2**.

The windows and the panorama glass sunroof* are closed.

Watch during the closing process to be sure that no one is injured. Removing the hand from the door handle stops the closing process immediately.◀

Opening liftgate

Press the button on the liftgate.
This corresponds to pressing the button.

If a remote control accidentally left in the cargo bay is detected in the locked vehicle after closing the liftgate, the liftgate opens again. The hazard warning flashers flash and a signal* sounds.◀

Switching on radio readiness

By briefly pressing the Start/Stop button, you switch on the radio readiness, refer to page 56.

When doing so, do not depress the brake pedal, otherwise the engine will start.◀

Starting engine

You can start the engine or switch on the ignition if a remote control is located in the interior of the vehicle. It need not be inserted in the ignition lock, refer to page 56.

As long as no remote control is detected in the vehicle, it is only possible to restart the engine within approx. 10 seconds after it is switched off if no door has been opened.

Switching off engine

- Remote control not in ignition lock:
  After switching off the engine, the transmission is automatically switched into transmission position P.
- Remote control in ignition lock:
  If transmission position N is engaged, the transmission remains in this position after the engine is switched off.

Before driving into a car wash

The vehicle can roll if you proceed according to the following steps:

1. Insert remote control into ignition lock.
2. Depress brake pedal.
3. Engage transmission position N.
4. Release the parking brake.
5. Switch off the engine.
6. Leave the remote control in the ignition lock.

Malfunction

The comfort access function may malfunction due to local radio waves. Then open or close the vehicle with the buttons on the remote control or with a key. To start the engine following this, insert the remote control in the ignition lock.

The warning lamp in the instrument cluster lights up when an attempt is made to start the engine: starting the engine is not possible. The remote control is not in the vehicle or has a malfunction. Take along the remote control into the vehicle or have it checked. Insert another remote control into the ignition lock if necessary.

The warning lamp in the instrument cluster lights up when the engine is running: the remote control is no longer in the vehicle. After switching off the engine, the engine can only be started again within approx. 10 seconds if no door has been opened.

The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster flashes and a message appears on the Control Display: replace the battery of the remote control.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Replacing battery

The remote control for comfort access contains a battery which must be replaced if necessary.

1. Remove integrated key from remote control, refer to page 28.
2. Remove cover.

CarManuals2.com

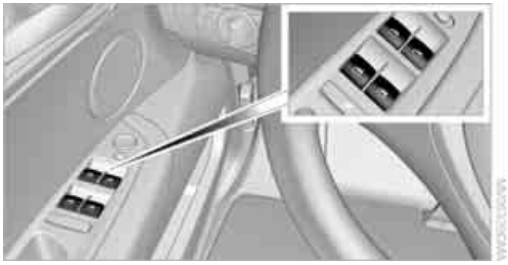
3. Lay in new battery with positive side facing upward.
4. Press cover closed.

Dispose of used batteries at a collection point or at your BMW Sports Activity Vehicle Center.◀

Windows

To prevent injuries, exercise care when closing the windows and keep them in your field of vision until they are shut.
Always take along the remote control when you leave the vehicle, otherwise children could, for example, operate the windows and injure themselves.◀

Opening, closing



▷ Press switch to resistance point:
The window continues to open as long as you keep the switch pressed.

▷ Press switch beyond resistance point:
The window opens automatically. Pressing the switch again stops the opening movement.

You can close the windows in the same manner by pulling the switch.

Separate switches for the rear windows are located in the rear.

For information on using the comfort operation at the door lock or with the remote control, refer to page 30 or 32.

For information on comfort closing with comfort access, refer to page 36.

After switching off ignition

You can still operate the windows with the remote control removed or the ignition switched off for approx. 1 minute, as long as neither of the front doors has been opened.

Pinch protection system

If the closing force rises beyond a predefined threshold during closing, the system will stop moving the window prior to lowering it again slightly.

Despite the pinch protection system, inspect the window's travel path prior to closing it, as the safety system might fail to detect certain kinds of obstructions, such as thin objects, and the window would continue closing.
Do not install any accessories in the range of movement of the windows, otherwise the pinch protection system will be impaired.◀

Closing without pinch protection system

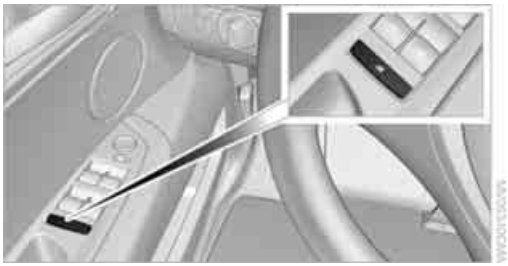
In case of danger from outside or if, for example, ice on the window prevents normal closing, proceed as follows:

1. Pull the switch beyond the resistance point and hold. The pinch protection system is limited and the window opens slightly if the closing force exceeds a certain value.
2. Pull the switch beyond the resistance point and hold again within approx. 4 seconds.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

The window closes without the pinch protection system.

Safety switch



With the safety switch, you can prevent the rear windows from being opened or closed via the switches in the rear passenger area, by children, for example. The LED lights up when this safety feature is activated.

Always press the safety switch when children ride in the rear, otherwise uncontrolled closing of the windows could lead to injuries.◀

Panorama glass sunroof*

The panorama glass sunroof is ready for operation with the ignition switched on, refer to page 56.

To prevent injuries, exercise care when closing the panorama glass sunroof and keep it in your field of vision until it is closed. Always take along the remote control when you leave the vehicle, otherwise children could, for example, operate the roof and injure themselves.◀

Raising, opening, closing

Press the switch or slide it in the desired direction up to the resistance point.

With the sliding visor open, the roof can be closed, opened and raised independently.

With the sunroof closed or raised, the sliding visor can be opened and closed independently.

For information on using the comfort operation at the door lock or with the remote control, refer to page 30 or 32.

For information on comfort closing with comfort access, refer to page 36.

Ventilation setting

Press the switch:
The sunroof is raised and the sliding visor is opened slightly.

Opening and closing automatically

Press the switch beyond the resistance point.
Pressing the switch again stops the motion.

Opening and closing sunroof and sliding visor together

Press the switch beyond the resistance point twice consecutively.
Pressing the switch again stops the motion.

Comfort position

Each time the panorama glass sunroof is completely opened and then closed, it stops in the comfort position. If desired, continue the motion following this with the switch.

CarManuals2.com

In the comfort position the wind noises in the interior are reduced.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Pinch protection system

If the panorama glass sunroof or sliding visor encounter resistance when closing from roughly one third of the sunroof opening or when closing from the raised position, the closing action is interrupted and the panorama glass sunroof and sliding visor reopen a little.

CarManuals2.com

Despite the pinch protection system, inspect the sunroof's travel path prior to closing it, as the safety system might fail to detect certain kinds of obstructions, such as very thin objects, and the sunroof would continue closing.◀

Closing without pinch protection system

In case of danger from outside, press the switch beyond the resistance point and hold. The roof closes without the pinch protection system.

Following interruptions in electrical power supply

After a power loss, the sunroof may only respond to the raise command. Then have the system initialized. BMW recommends having this work carried out by your BMW Sports Activity Vehicle Center.

Moving manually

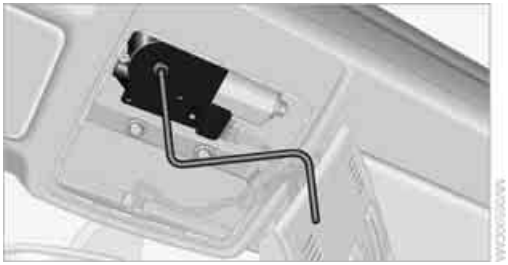
In the event of an electrical malfunction, you can move the roof manually:

1. Fold down the cover. To do this, press the clips in the notches on each side with a screwdriver.

2. Remove the operating unit.

3. Remove the engine connector. The effort required for manual movement is considerably reduced.

4. Remove the Allen key from the mounting next to the toolkit and insert it in the opening provided. Move the panorama glass sunroof in the desired direction.



5. Reinstall the operating unit.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Adjusting

Sitting safely

The ideal sitting position can make a vital contribution to relaxed, fatigue-free driving. In the interaction with the safety belts, the head restraints and the airbags, the seat position plays an important role in an accident. To ensure that the safety systems operate with optimal efficiency, we strongly urge you to observe the instructions contained in the following section.

CarManuals2.com

For additional information on Transporting children safely, refer to page 52.

Airbags

Always maintain an adequate distance between yourself and the airbags. Always hold the steering wheel by its rim with hands at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions, to minimize the risk of injuries to your hands and arms in the event of airbag deployment.
No one and nothing is to come between the airbags and the seat occupant.
Do not use the cover of the front airbag on the front passenger side as a storage area. Make sure that the front passenger is sitting correctly and does not rest feet or legs on the instrument panel, otherwise leg injuries can occur if the front airbag is triggered.
Make sure that occupants do not rest their head on the side or head airbag, otherwise injuries can occur if the airbags are triggered.◀

Even if you adhere to all the instructions, injuries resulting from contact with airbags cannot be fully excluded, depending on the circumstances. The ignition and inflation noise may provoke a mild hearing loss in extremely sensitive individuals. This effect is usually only temporary.

For airbag locations and additional information on airbags, refer to page 92.

Head restraints

A correctly adjusted head restraint reduces the risk of spinal injury in the event of an accident.

Adjust the head restraint so that its center is approx. at ear level. Otherwise there is increased danger of injury in the event of an accident.◀

Push the head restraints of the 3rd row seats* into the top position.

Head restraints, refer to page 43.

Safety belts

Before every drive, make sure that safety belts are being worn at all of the occupied seats. Airbags complement the safety belt as an additional safety device, but they do not represent a substitute.

Depending on its equipment, your vehicle has either five or seven seats, which are all provided with a safety belt.

Never allow more than one person to wear a single safety belt. Never allow infants or small children to ride in a passenger's lap. Make sure that the belt lies low around the hips in the lap area and does not press on the abdomen. The safety belt may not lie across the neck, rub on sharp edges, be routed over solid or breakable objects or be pinched. Wear the safety belt without twisting, snugly across the lap and shoulders, as close to the body as possible. Otherwise the belt can slip over the hips in the lap area in a frontal impact and injure the abdomen. Avoid wearing clothing that prevents the belt from fitting properly and pull the belt in the upper body area periodically to readjust the tension, in order to avoid a reduction in the restraint of the safety belt.
If the center safety belt in the rear is used, the larger backrest half must be locked, refer to page 117, otherwise the center safety belt has no restraining action.◀

Safety belts, refer to page 45.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Seats

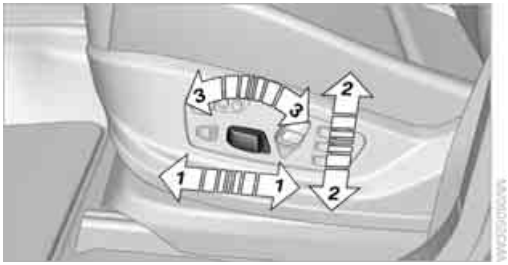
Note before adjusting

Never attempt to adjust or calibrate your seat while the vehicle is moving. The seat could respond with unexpected movement, and the ensuing loss of vehicle control could lead to an accident.
Never adjust manually adjustable seats while the vehicle is moving, as otherwise the restraining effect of these seats during accidents could be reduced.
Also on the passenger side, do not incline the backrest too far to the rear while the vehicle is being driven, otherwise there is a danger in the event of an accident of sliding under the safety belt, eliminating the protection normally provided by the belt.◀

Also observe the information on damage to safety belts on page 46 and on the height of the head restraints on page 43.

Adjusting seat

To ensure that the safety systems continue to provide optimized protection, please observe the adjustment instructions on page 40.◀

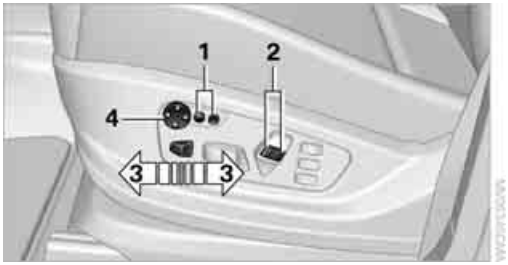


1 Longitudinal direction
2 Height
3 Angle

4 Backrest

Adjusting comfort seat*

In this seat, you can also adjust:



1 Backrest width
2 Shoulder support
3 Thigh support
4 Lumbar support*, see below

Backrest width

The width of the backrest can be changed with the side wings to adjust the side support to your own needs.

Shoulder support

This also supports the back in the shoulder area, provides a relaxed sitting position and helps relieve stress on the shoulder muscles.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Adjusting lumbar support*

You can also adjust the contour of the backrest to obtain additional support in the lumbar region.

The upper hips and spinal column receive supplementary support to help you maintain a relaxed, upright sitting position.

▷ Increase or decrease curvature: press front or rear section of switch.

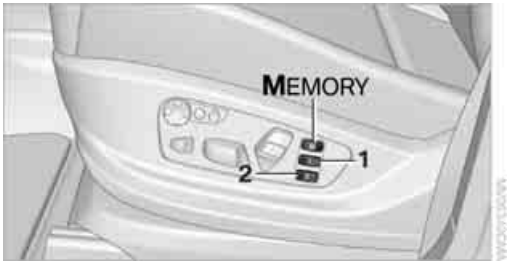
▷ Shift curvature up or down: press upper or lower section of switch.

Seat, mirror and steering wheel memory*

You can store and select two different adjustment settings for the driver's seat, exterior mirrors and steering wheel.

The adjustment of the backrest width and lumbar support is not stored in the memory.

Storing



1. Switch on radio readiness or ignition, refer to page 56.
2. Set the desired seat, exterior mirror and steering wheel positions.
3. Press the M button:
   The LED in the button lights up.
4. Press the desired memory button **1** or **2**:
   The LED goes out.

   The driver's seat and exterior mirror positions are stored for the remote control currently in use.

Calling up automatically

You can choose when the stored driver's seat and exterior mirror positions are called up.

▷ Calling up when unlocking vehicle

▷ Calling up when opening driver's door

⚠ When using this feature, always make sure that the footwell behind the driver's seat is empty and unobstructed. Failure to do so could cause injury to persons or damage to objects behind the seat as a result of a rearward movement of the seat.◀

The system cancels the adjustment procedure when you briefly press one of the seat adjustment switches or one of the memory buttons.

Selecting calling up automatically

CarManuals2.com

iDrive, for explanation of concept, refer to page 16.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Vehicle / Tires" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Door locks" is selected and press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

6. Select "Central locking" and press the controller.
7. Select "Last seat pos." and press the controller.
8. Select "After unlocking" or "After door opened".

9. Press the controller.

Deactivating calling up automatically

Select "Deactivated" and press the controller.

Calling up manually

Do not call up a position from the memory while the vehicle is moving. There is a risk of accident from unexpected movement of the seat or steering wheel.◀

Comfort mode

1. Open the driver's door after unlocking or switch on radio readiness.
2. Briefly press the desired memory button **1** or **2**.

The system cancels the adjustment procedure when you briefly press one of the seat adjustment switches or one of the memory buttons.

Safety feature

1. Close the driver's door and switch the ignition on or off.
2. Press the desired memory button **1** or **2** and maintain pressure until the adjustment process has been completed.

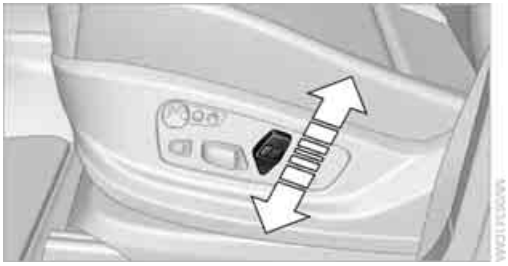
If the M button was pressed inadvertently: press the button again; the LED goes out.

Head restraints

A correctly adjusted head restraint reduces the risk of spinal injury in the event of an accident.

Adjust the head restraint so that its center is approx. at ear level. Otherwise there is increased danger of injury in the event of an accident. Only remove the head restraints if the respective seat is not occupied. Reinstall the head restraints before transporting passengers, as otherwise the head restraint cannot provide its protective function.◀

Front seats: setting the height of the head restraint



You can adjust the height of the head restraints electrically.

Removing:

1. Tilt the backrest toward the rear.
2. Move the head restraint up as far as possible.
3. Pull out the head restraint completely with a firm movement.

Installing:

1. Push the switch upward for a maximum of approx. 10 seconds, however if possible only until a change of the humming noise indicates that the installed head restraint would have been moved all the way to the top.
2. Insert the head restraint and press down on both sides until it is heard and felt to engage.

CarManuals2.com

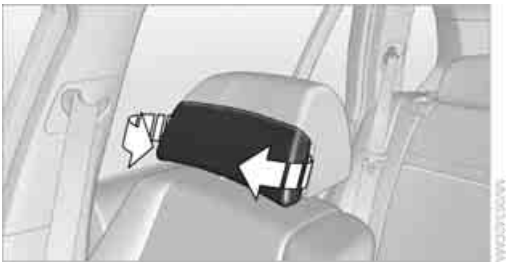
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Front seats: setting the angle of the head restraint

Swivel the head restraint.

With the comfort seat, use the shoulder support to set the distance to the back of the head.

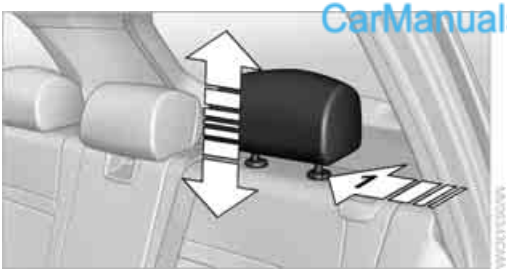
Adjusting side extensions* of head restraints with comfort seat



You can fold the side extensions on the head restraint forward for increased lateral support in the resting position.

Rear seats and 3rd row seats*

Adjusting height



▷ To raise: pull up.

▷ To lower: press the button, arrow **1**, and push the head restraint downward.

Rear seats

2nd row seats*

The 2nd row seats are divided. You can adjust each side separately.

⚠ Never adjust the 2nd row seats while the vehicle is moving, as otherwise the passengers on the 3rd row seats could be injured. Make sure that the locking devices of the 2nd row seats properly engage following adjustment. Otherwise the restraining effect of the safety belts during an accident could be reduced.◀

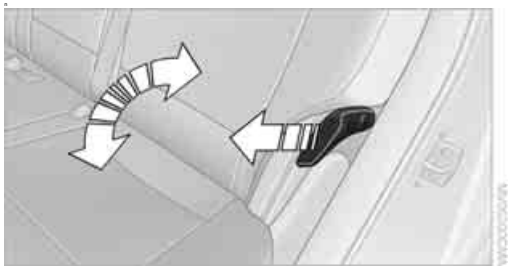
Longitudinal direction

CarManuals2.com

1. Pull the lever and slide the seat into the desired position.
2. Release the lever and move the seat slightly forward or back so that it engages properly.

Backrest

The backrests can be adjusted in four steps.



Pull the lever and apply weight to or remove weight from the backrest as needed.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Access to 3rd row seats

Pull the lever and fold the seat forward.

The handle recess on the interior trim of the door pillar makes climbing in easier.◀

When folding back the 2nd row seats, make sure that the footwell under the 2nd row seats is clear. Otherwise persons in the 3rd row seats could be injured or objects damaged.◀

Warning lamp for 2nd row seats: Lights up when the second row seats are not locked. A message also appears on the Control Display.

3rd row seats*

The 3rd row seats are divided and offer space for two persons.

Folding up backrest

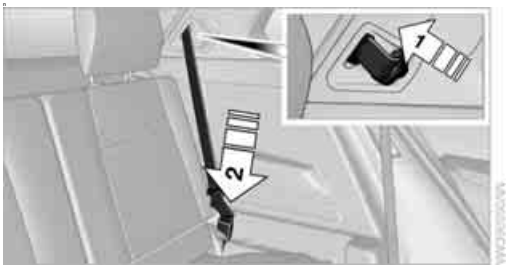
Before folding up the backrest, remove the roll-up cover, refer to page, 116.

1. Pull the lever, refer to arrow. The backrest is unlocked.

2. Fold up and engage the backrest.

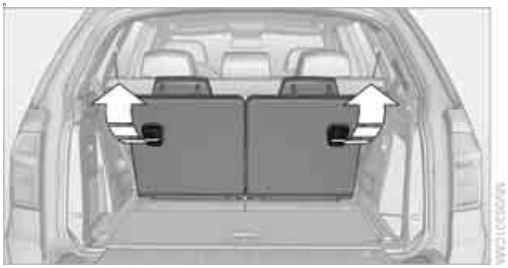
   Make sure that the catch engages securely. If it is not properly engaged, transported cargo could enter the passenger compartment during braking or evasive maneuvers and endanger the vehicle occupants.◀

3. Push the head restraints into the top position.
4. Release the latch plate on the safety belt from the mount, refer to arrow **1**, and insert it into the buckle of the safety belt, refer to arrow **2**. The latch plate must audibly engage.



Folding backrest down

1. Push down the head restraint, refer to page 44.
2. Pull the lever, refer to arrows. The backrests are released.



3. Fold the backrest down.

Safety belts

To ensure that the safety systems continue to provide optimized protection, please observe the adjustment instructions on page 40.◀

CarManuals2.com

Before every drive, make sure that safety belts are being worn at all of the occupied seats. Airbags complement the safety belt as an addi-

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

tional safety device, but they do not represent a substitute.

Fastening

Make sure you hear the latch plate engage in the belt buckle.

Safety belt reminder for driver's seat and passenger seat

The indicator lamp lights up and a signal sounds. A message also appears on the Control Display. Please check whether the safety belt is correctly fastened.

The safety belt reminder is operative at speeds above approx. 5 mph/8 km/h. It can also be activated if objects are placed on the passenger seat.

Releasing

1. Grasp the belt firmly.
2. Press the red button in the buckle.
3. Guide the belt into its reel.

The shoulder strap's anchorage point will be correct for adult seat occupants of every build if the seat is correctly adjusted, refer to page 41.

The two rear safety belt buckles integrated into the rear seat are for passengers sitting on the left and right. The belt buckle embossed with the word CENTER is intended exclusively for use by passengers riding in the center position.

Damage to safety belts

In the event of loads caused by accidents or other damage: replace the belt system including the safety belt tensioners and any child restraint systems, and have the belt anchor points checked. Only have this work carried out at a BMW Sports Activity Vehicle Center or at a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel. Otherwise correct operation of this safety equipment is not guaranteed.◀

CarManuals2.com

Belt-force limiter

The effect of the belt-force limiter on the driver's seat is dependent on the position of the driver's seat.

To maintain the long-term accuracy of this function, the driver's seat must be calibrated if a corresponding message is displayed on the Control Display.

Calibrating driver's seat

The warning lamp lights up. A message also appears on the Control Display. Please calibrate the driver's seat.

1. Move the driver's seat forward until it stops.
2. Move the driver's seat forward again. It briefly moves toward the front in the process.
3. Set the desired seating position again.

The calibration is completed when the message on the Control Display disappears. Should this message continue to be displayed, repeat the calibration. If the message does not disappear even after repeated calibration, have the system checked as soon as possible.

Never carry out calibration while the vehicle is moving, as otherwise accidents could occur.
During the calibration, make sure that no persons or objects are pinched, as otherwise injuries or damage could occur.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Seat heating*

Front

The temperature setting progresses one step through its control sequence each time you press the button. The maximum temperature is supplied when three LEDs are lit.

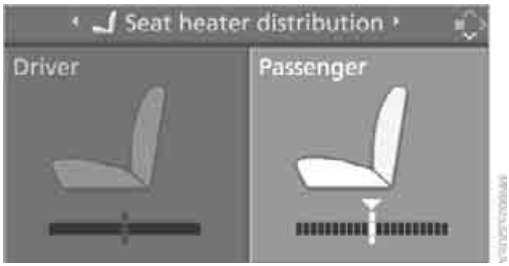
To switch off: press the button longer.

Temperature distribution

The heat output can be distributed variously in the seat cushion and the backrest.

iDrive, for explanation of concept, refer to page 16.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Move the controller to the left to open "Climate".
3. Select "Seat heater distribution" and press the controller.
4. Move the controller to the left or right to select "Driver" or "Passenger".



5. Turn the controller. The adjustment is applied; the field can be changed.

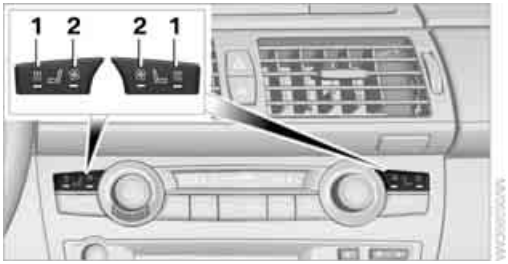
CarManuals2.com

Rear

Operation similar to front seat heating; without temperature distribution.

Active seat ventilation* and seat heating*

Front



1 Seat heating

2 Active seat ventilation

Press button **1** or **2** once depending on the temperature or ventilation position. The LED in the respective button lights up.

The temperature or ventilation positions are indicated on the Control Display, refer to temperature or air distribution.

To switch off: press and hold button **1** or **2**.

Temperature or air distribution

The heat output or ventilation can be distributed variously in the seat cushion and the backrest.

iDrive, for explanation of concept, refer to page 16.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

1. Open the start menu.
2. Move the controller to the left to open "Climate".
3. Select "Driver's seat climate" or "Passenger's seat climate" and press the controller.
4. Turn the controller to adjust the distribution.
   The setting is applied.

Heated rear seats

Operation similar to front seat heating; without temperature distribution, refer to page 47.

Active seat*

CarManuals2.com

The seat cushion is actively varied by alternately raising and lowering the right and left half of the seat cushion. This reduces muscular tension and fatigue to help prevent lower back pain.

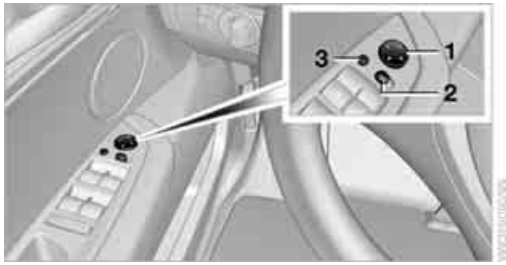
Press the button to switch on; the LED lights up.

If you switch off the active seat, it can take up to 1 minute before the two halves of the seat cushion have returned to their initial position.

Mirrors

Exterior mirrors

The mirror on the passenger's side is more curved than the driver's mirror. Objects reflected in the mirror are closer than they appear. Do not estimate the distance of following traffic based on what you see in the mirrors, otherwise there is an increased accident risk.◀



1 Adjusting

2 Switching to the other mirror or to the automatic curb monitor

3 Folding mirrors in and out*

Storing the mirror positions, refer to Seat, mirror and steering wheel memory on page 42.

Manual adjustment

You can also adjust the mirrors manually by pressing against the outer edges of their mirror glass.

Folding mirrors in and out*

Pressing button **3** allows you to fold the mirrors in and out again up to a speed of approx. 12 mph/20 km/h. This is advantageous, for example, in car washes, narrow streets or for bringing mirrors that have been manually folded in back into the correct position.
Folded in mirrors fold out again at a speed of approx. 25 mph/40 km/h.

Before going through a car wash, fold the mirrors in manually, or with button **3**, otherwise they could be damaged, depending on the width of the car wash system.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

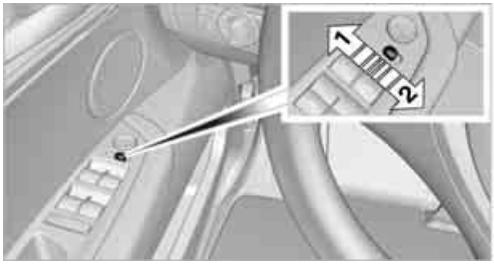
Automatic heating

Below a certain outdoor temperature, both exterior mirrors are automatically heated when the motor is running or the ignition is switched on.

Tilting down passenger-side exterior mirror – automatic curb monitor*

Activating

1. Slide switch into the driver's side mirror position, arrow **1**.



2. Engage transmission position R.
   The mirror glass tilts downward somewhat on the passenger's side. This allows the driver to see the area immediately adjacent to the vehicle – such as a curb – when parking, etc.

CarManuals2.com

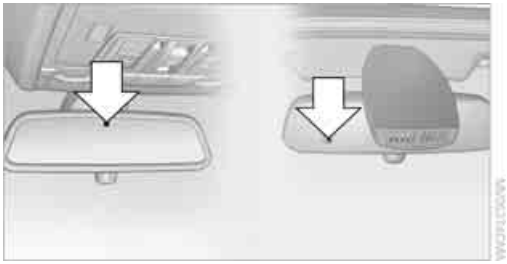
Deactivating

Slide switch into the passenger side mirror position, arrow **2**.

Interior rearview mirror

To reduce the dazzle effect of following vehicles at night, turn the knob.

Interior and exterior mirrors, automatic dimming feature*



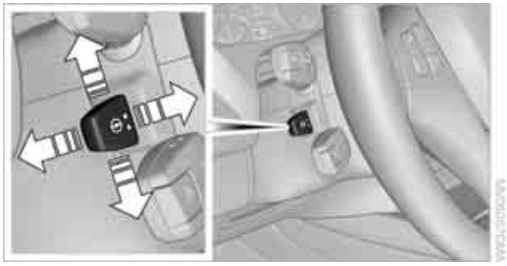
This feature is controlled by two photocells in the interior rearview mirror. One is integrated into the glass of the mirror, while the other is located at an offset position on the rear of the mirror housing.

For trouble-free operation, keep the photocells clean and do not cover the area between the interior rearview mirror and the windshield. Do not attach stickers of any kind to the windshield in front of the mirror, either.

Steering wheel

Adjusting

Do not adjust the steering wheel while the vehicle is moving. There is a risk of accident as the result of unexpected movement.◀



The steering wheel can be adjusted in four directions.

Storing steering wheel positions, refer to Seat, mirror and steering wheel memory on page 42.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Easy entry/exit*

To facilitate entry and exit, the steering wheel temporarily moves into the uppermost position.

Steering wheel heating*

CarManuals2.com

Press the button with the ignition switched on; the LED lights up.

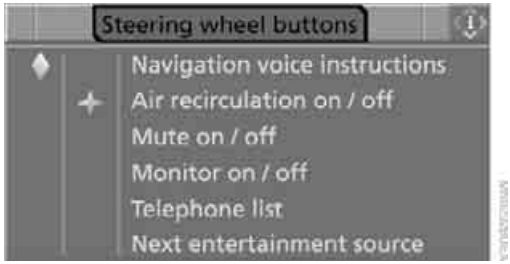
Programmable buttons* on steering wheel

You can program the buttons individually.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

iDrive, for explanation of concept, refer to page 16.

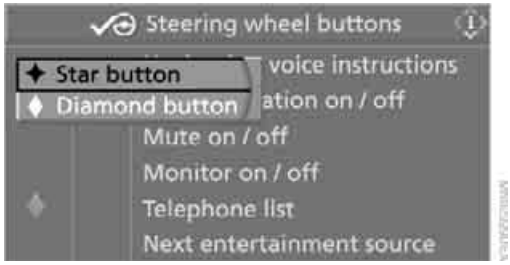
1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Steering wheel buttons" and press the controller.



A list of different functions appears:

- ▷ "Navigation voice instructions"
  Voice instructions for the navigation system*
- ▷ "Air recirculation on / off"
  Permanently shutting off outside air, refer to AUC Automatic recirculated-air control on page 105
- ▷ "Mute on / off"
  Mutes the audio sources
- ▷ "Monitor on / off"
  Switches the Control Display on/off
- ▷ "Telephone list"*
  Display/hide phone book or last list of stored phone numbers
- ▷ "Next entertainment source"
  Changes audio source

5. Select the desired function and press the controller.
6. Select the button if necessary and press the controller.



You can operate the selected function using the corresponding button.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Operating function

Press the corresponding button on the steering wheel.

If you have programmed "Navigation voice instructions" for one of the buttons:

- ▷ To switch voice instructions on/off: Hold the button down.
- ▷ To repeat the last voice instruction: Press the button.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Transporting children safely

The right place for children

Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle, otherwise they could endanger themselves and other persons, e.g. by opening the doors.◀

Children always in the rear

Accident research shows that the safest place for children is on the rear seat.

Children younger than 13 years of age or with a height under 5 ft/150 cm may only be transported on the 2nd row seats in child restraint systems which correspond to the age, weight and height of the child. Otherwise there is an increased danger of injury in an accident.◀

Children 13 years of age or older must wear a safety belt as soon as a suitable child restraint system can no longer be used due to their age, weight and size.

Exception for front passenger seat

Should it be necessary to use a child restraint system on the front passenger seat, the front and side airbags on the passenger side must be deactivated. Otherwise, there is an increased risk of injury for the child if the airbags are triggered, even with a child restraint system. Your BMW Sports Activity Vehicle Center will be happy to advise you.◀

For more information on automatic deactivation of the front passenger airbags, refer to page 93.

Installing child restraint systems

Observe the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions for selection, installation and use of the child restraint systems. Otherwise the degree of protection may be reduced.◀

For equipment with 3rd row seats*, make sure that the seat of the 2nd row seats on which the child restraint system is mounted is properly locked. Otherwise there is an increased risk of injury for the child in an accident.
Do not mount child restraint systems on the 3rd row seats, as otherwise the protection provided by these child restraint systems may be reduced.◀

On the front passenger seat

After installing a child restraint system on the front passenger seat, make sure that the front and side airbags on the front passenger side have been deactivated. Otherwise, there is an increased risk of injury when the airbags are triggered.◀

Backrest width* on front passenger seat

The backrest width adjustment of the front passenger seat must be completely open, as otherwise the child's seat cannot completely contact the backrest. After the child's seat is installed, do not request any memory position, as otherwise there is the risk of injury.◀

1. Backrest width adjustment completely open, refer to page 41.
2. Install child's seat.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Child seat security

CarManuals2.com

All safety belts of the 2nd row seats and the safety belt for the front passenger can be locked against pulling out to secure child restraint systems.

Locking safety belt

1. Secure the child restraint system with the belt.
2. Pull out the belt webbing completely.
3. Allow the belt webbing to be pulled in and pull taut against the child restraint system.

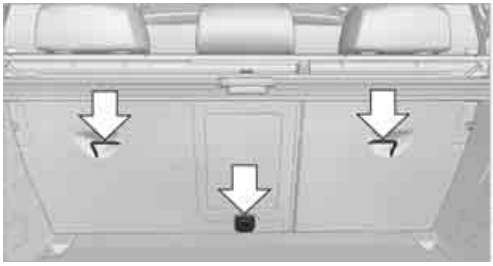
The safety belt is locked.

Unlocking safety belt

1. Open the belt buckle.
2. Remove the child restraint system.
3. Allow the belt webbing to be pulled in completely.

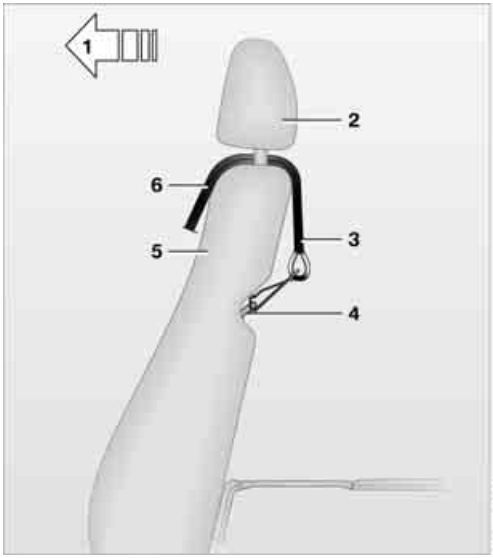
Child restraint system with tether strap

Only use the tether-strap mounting points to secure child restraint systems, otherwise the mounting points could be damaged.
Do not mount child restraint systems on the 3rd row seats, as otherwise the protection provided by these child restraint systems may be reduced.◀



There are three additional mounting points for child restraint systems with a tether strap on the 2nd row seats, refer to arrows. Fold out before using the center mounting point.

Placement of tether strap



1 Forward driving direction
2 Head restraint
3 Attaching clip
4 Child restraint anchor fitting
5 Backrest
6 Tether strap

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

When using the cargo bay cover, the upper retaining strap must be routed between the rear backrest and the cargo bay cover.

Mounting tether strap on 2nd row seats

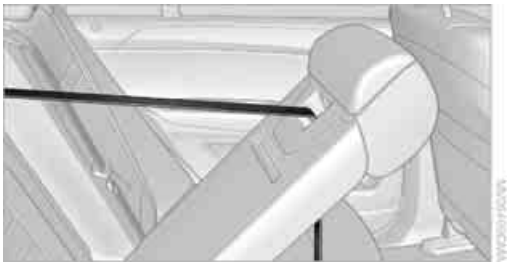
On outer seats:

1. Slide the head restraint upward.
2. Guide the upper retaining strap between the head restraint brackets.
3. Hook in the upper retaining strap on the mounting point with the hook.
4. Slide the head restraint into the bottom position.
5. Pull upper retaining strap taut.

On center seat with equipment with two rows of seats:

CarManuals2.com

1. Fold the center armrest somewhat toward the front.
2. Guide the upper retaining strap through the opening in the center armrest.



3. Fold back and engage the center armrest.
4. Hook in the upper retaining strap at the mounting point.
5. Pull the upper retaining strap taut.

On center seat with equipment with three rows of seats:

1. Slide head restraint upward.
2. Guide the upper retaining strap between the head restraint brackets.
3. Hook in the upper retaining strap on the mounting point with the hook.
4. Slide the head restraint into the bottom position.
5. Pull the upper retaining strap taut.

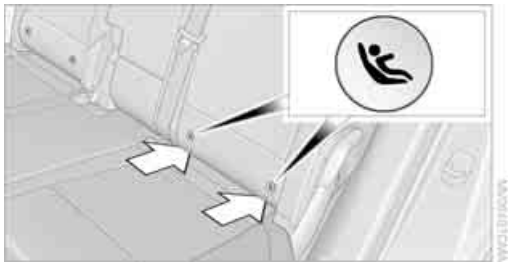
LATCH child restraint fixing system

LATCH: Lower Anchor and Tethers for CHildren.

To attach and use a LATCH child restraint system, follow the operating and safety instructions of the system manufacturer.◀

Before attaching the LATCH child's seat, pull the belt away from the region of the child restraint fixing system.

Access to brackets



The anchor points for the LATCH anchors are located at the positions indicated by arrows in the gap between the seat and the backrest.

Make sure that both lower LATCH anchor fittings are properly engaged and the child restraint system firmly contacts the backrest.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

On trips

If the vehicle is equipped with rear side airbags, make sure that children do not lean out of the child's seat towards the door panels. Otherwise injuries can be caused if the side airbags are triggered.◀

CarManuals2.com

Child-safety locks for rear doors

Slide down the safety lever on the rear doors: The door can now be opened from the outside only.

Safety switch for power windows

Always press the safety switch for the power windows, refer to page 38, when children are riding in the rear of the vehicle.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Driving

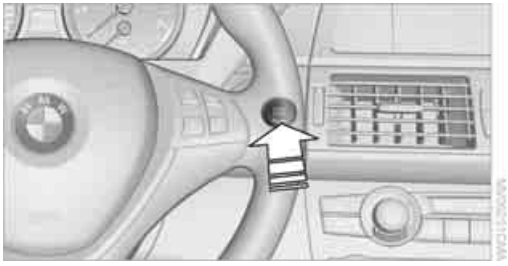
Ignition lock

Insert the remote control as far as possible into the ignition lock.
Radio readiness switches on. Some electronic systems/consumers are ready for operation.

Removing remote control from ignition lock

Briefly press in the remote control; it is pushed out somewhat.
The ignition is switched off if it was still switched on.

Start/Stop button



Briefly pressing the Start/Stop button several times switches the radio readiness or the ignition on and off.

▷ Briefly pressing the Start/Stop button with the brake pedal depressed starts the engine.◀

CarManuals2.com

Radio readiness

Some electronic systems/consumers are ready for operation. The time and outside temperature are displayed in the instrument cluster.

Radio readiness is automatically switched off:

- ▷ when the remote control is removed from the ignition lock
- ▷ with comfort access* by touching the sensitive surface on the door handle, refer to Locking on page 35

Ignition on

All electronic systems/consumers are ready for operation. The odometer and the trip odometer are displayed in the instrument cluster, refer to page 67.

▷ Please switch off the ignition and the electronic systems/consumers which are not required when the engine is not running to save the battery.◀

Radio readiness and ignition off

All indicator and warning lamps in the instrument cluster go out.

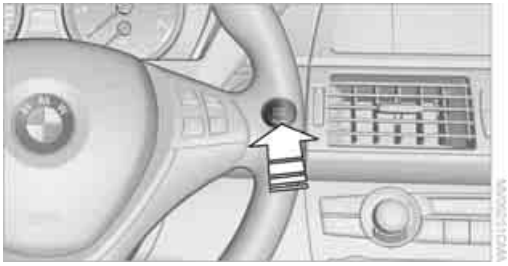
Starting engine

⚠ Do not run the engine in closed rooms, otherwise the inhalation of toxic exhaust gases can cause unconsciousness and death. The exhaust gases contain carbon monoxide, an odorless and colorless, but highly toxic gas. Never leave an unattended vehicle with the engine running, as such a vehicle represents a potential safety hazard.
To prevent the vehicle from rolling, always select neutral or transmission position P and set the parking brake before leaving the vehicle with the engine running.◀

When starting the engine, do not press the accelerator pedal.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Do not allow the engine to warm up by leaving it running while the vehicle remains stationary. Instead, drive off at a moderate engine speed.



The engine starts when you depress the brake pedal while briefly pressing the Start/Stop button.◀

Procedure

1. Depress brake pedal.
2. Briefly press the Start/Stop button.

The system responds by automatically engaging the starter for a certain period and automatically disengaging it as soon as the engine starts.

Special starting conditions

Depress the accelerator pedal half way when starting the engine in the following situations:

- ▷ The engine fails to start on the first attempt, e.g. if it is very hot or cold.
- ▷ The engine is started at very low temperatures, below approx. +5 °F /–15 °C, at high altitudes, over approx. 3,300 ft/1,000 m.

Avoid frequent starting in quick succession or repeated starting attempts in which the engine does not start. Otherwise, the fuel is not burned or inadequately burned and there is a danger of overheating and damaging the catalytic converter.◀

Switching off engine

When leaving the vehicle, always take the remote control with you.
When parking on a downhill incline, set the parking brake, otherwise the vehicle could roll away.◀

Procedure

1. Engage transmission position P with the vehicle stopped.
2. Briefly press the Start/Stop button.

Procedure before driving into a car wash

The vehicle can roll if you proceed according to the following steps:

1. With comfort access*: insert the remote control into the ignition lock.
2. Depress brake pedal.
3. With the engine running, engage transmission position N.
4. Release the parking brake.
5. Switch off the engine.
6. Leave the remote control in the ignition lock.

CarManuals2.com

Transmission position P will be engaged:

- ▷ automatically after approx. 30 minutes
- ▷ if you remove the remote control from the ignition lock

Parking brake

The concept

Your BMW is equipped with an electromechanical parking brake that is set and released with a button.
The parking brake is primarily intended to prevent the vehicle from rolling while parked.

With the engine stopped, the parking brake acts on the rear wheels via an electromechanical system. When the engine is running, the parking brake acts on the disc brakes of the front and rear wheels via the brake hydraulics.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Setting

CarManuals2.com

Pull button. The parking brake is set.

PARK The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster lights up red. The parking brake is set.

(P) Indicator lamp on Canadian models.

The remote control does not have to be inserted into the ignition lock for the parking brake to be set.

While driving

If exceptional circumstances should make it necessary to set the parking brake while the vehicle is in motion, pull on the button longer. The vehicle continues to brake forcefully for as long as you pull on the button.

PARK The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster lights up red, a chime sounds and the brake lamps light up.

(P) Indicator lamp on Canadian models.

As soon as you brake the vehicle almost to a stop, i.e., down to a speed of approx. 2 mph/ 3 km/h or below, the parking brake remains set.

Releasing

With engine running

Press the button with the brake depressed.

PARK The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster goes out.

(P) Indicator lamp on Canadian models.

With engine switched off

Press the button with the brake depressed.

This function is useful, for example, in automatic car washes, refer to pages 36, 124.

⚠ When leaving the vehicle, take the remote control with you; this precaution prevents children from releasing the parking brake, etc.◀

Parking brake malfunction

In case of a failure of or fault in the parking brake, secure the vehicle against rolling if you leave the vehicle.

Releasing parking brake manually

In the event of an electrical power loss or electrical malfunction, you can release the parking brake manually.

⚠ Before manually releasing the parking brake and each time you park the vehicle without setting the parking brake, make sure that the automatic transmission is in position P, refer to page 60. Be sure to pay attention to the information in the instrument cluster.
In addition, secure the vehicle against rolling, e.g. with a chock. Otherwise there is a danger

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

that the vehicle could roll if parked on a steep slope.◀

If it becomes necessary to also release the transmission lock of the automatic transmission manually, follow this sequence:

1. If necessary, start by releasing the parking brake manually.
2. Then release the automatic transmission's transmission lock manually, refer to page 61.

Information on jump starting and towing from page 237.

Releasing

1. Open the left-hand side panel in the cargo bay.
2. Remove the first-aid kit* and the warning triangle* if necessary.

3. Insert the releasing tool, contained in the onboard tool kit under the floor panel, refer to page 228, at the releasing point.
4. Firmly pull the releasing tool upward against the mechanical resistance, refer to arrow, until a considerable increase in force is felt and the parking brake is then clearly heard to release.
5. Stow the releasing tool, warning triangle* and first-aid kit* and close the left side panel in the cargo bay.

Only have a malfunction corrected by the nearest BMW Sports Activity Vehicle Center or a workshop that works in accordance with BMW guidelines and uses appropriately trained personnel. If the parking brake has been released manually in response to a malfunction, only technicians can return it to operation.◀

Following manual release, the actual status of the parking brake may deviate from that displayed by the indicator lamp.◀

Operation after interruptions in power supply

CarManuals2.com

The parking brake can only be used again if it was manually released due to an interruption in the supply of electrical power. Otherwise the operation of the parking brake is not ensured and there is a danger of the vehicle rolling despite the parking brake being set.◀

Procedure

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Press the button with the brake depressed.

PARK The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster goes out as soon as the parking brake is ready for operation again.

(P) Indicator lamp on Canadian models.

Any noises which occur are normal. Start-up may take several seconds.

Automatic transmission with Steptronic

In addition to fully automatic operation, you can also manually shift with the Steptronic, refer to page 61.

Transmission positions

P R N D M/S + –

To prevent the vehicle from creeping after you select a driving position, maintain pressure on the brake pedal until you are ready to drive off.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

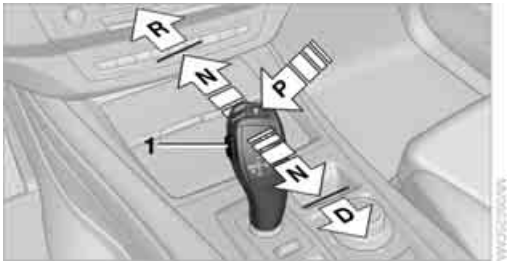
Displays in instrument cluster

P R N D DS M1 to M6

The transmission position is indicated, and in the manual mode, the gear currently engaged.

Engaging transmission position

- You can only engage transmission positions D, R or N when the engine is running.
- With the vehicle stationary, depress the brake pedal before shifting out of P or N; otherwise the shift command will not be executed.
- To prevent the vehicle from creeping after you select a driving position, maintain pressure on the brake pedal until you are ready to drive off.



The engaged transmission position is displayed on the selector lever.

Engaging D, R or N

Move the selector lever in the desired direction.

The selector lever immediately returns to the center position when released.

- N Neutral:
  Up to pressure point, arrow **N**.
- D Drive:
  Depending on the driving position, press back up to the pressure point, arrow **D**, or beyond.
- R Reverse:
  Depending on the driving position, press forward up to the pressure point, arrow **R**, or beyond. Press the release button **1** at the same time.

Engaging P

Press button **P**.

Press the brake pedal before shifting out of N; the shift command will not be executed unless the brake is applied.

Also observe the additional information on the automatic transmission.

R Reverse

Select only when the vehicle is stationary.

An interlock prevents inadvertent gearshifts into transmission position R. To deactivate the interlock, press the release button **1**.

P Park

Select only when the vehicle is stationary.
The rear wheels are locked.

▷ P is engaged automatically as soon as you switch off the engine unless N is engaged and on vehicles with comfort access the remote control is inserted in the ignition lock, refer to page 56.◀

Engaging N, D or R

With transmission position P engaged, an interlock prevents accidentally shifting into transmission positions N, D and R. To deactivate the interlock, press the release button **1**.

N Neutral

Can, for example, be engaged in automatic car washes. The vehicle can roll.

▷ N remains engaged even after the engine is switched off whenever you leave the remote control in the ignition lock. This function is used, for example, in a car wash, refer to page 57. After approx. 30 minutes P is automatically engaged.◀

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

D Drive, automatic position

Position for normal vehicle operation. All forward gears are available.
Under normal operating conditions, the fuel consumption is lowest when driving in position D.

Kick-down

The kick-down mode provides maximum acceleration.
Depress the accelerator pedal past the increased resistance point at the full-throttle position.

Sport program and manual mode M/S

Move selector lever from transmission position D toward the left into the M/S shifting slot: The selector lever remains in the M/S shifting slot, the sport program is activated and DS is shown in the instrument cluster. This position is recommended for a performance-oriented driving style.

When the selector lever is pressed forward or back, the manual mode is activated and the Steptronic shifts the gear. The instrument cluster shows M1 through M6.

▷ Press selector lever forward:
The transmission downshifts.

▷ Press selector lever back:
The transmission upshifts.

Upshifts and downshifts are executed only when they will result in a plausible combination of engine and vehicle speed; thus, for example, a downshift that would cause the engine to overrev will not be executed by the system. The selected gear is briefly displayed in the instrument cluster, followed by the current gear.

To use the automatic function again, move the selector lever to the right into position D.

▷ If transmission position P is engaged, the selector lever automatically returns to the center position of the automatic slot.◀

Manually releasing transmission lock

▷ In case of a power failure, e.g. when the battery is drained or disconnected, or an electrical malfunction, the transmission lock must be manually released, as otherwise the rear wheels are blocked and the vehicle cannot be towed.◀

⚠ When manually releasing the transmission lock, depress the brake pedal, as otherwise there is a danger of the vehicle rolling when the transmission lock is manually released.◀

The transmission lock should only be released for towing. Reengage the transmission lock after parking the vehicle at its destination.

If it also becomes necessary to manually release the parking brake, follow this sequence:

1. Secure the vehicle against rolling.
2. Manually release the parking brake, refer to page 58.
3. Manually release the transmission lock of the automatic transmission.

Information on jump starting and towing from page 237.

Releasing

1. Slide back the cover of the cup holder and remove the floor mat on the bar between the cup holders.
2. Open the cover in the bottom of the cup holder with the releasing tool.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

3. Insert the releasing tool, contained in the onboard tool kit under the floor panel, refer to page 228, into the opening, arrow **1**.
4. Turn the releasing tool as far as possible, arrow **2**, and then press downward. The transmission lock is released.

Lock the transmission lock after parking the vehicle at its destination. Otherwise there is a danger of the vehicle rolling.◀

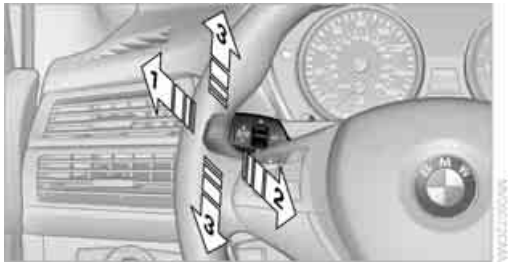
Locking

1. Pull out the releasing tool.
   The transmission lock is locked again.
2. Close the cover in the bottom of the cup holder and lay in the mat again.
3. Close the cover of the cup holder and stow the releasing tool.

The display in the instrument cluster must change from N to P after locking the transmission lock. Otherwise there is a danger of the vehicle rolling.◀

Information on jump starting and towing from page 237.

Turn signals/headlamp flasher/high beams



1 High beams

2 Headlamp flasher

3 Turn signals

Using turn signals

Press the lever beyond the resistance point.

To switch off manually, press the lever up to the resistance point.

Atypically rapid flashing of the indicator lamp indicates that a turn signal bulb needs to be replaced.◀

Signaling briefly

Press lever to resistance point and hold for as long as you wish to signal.

Triple turn signal activation

Press the lever up to the resistance point; the turn signal flashes once.

You can switch over this function so that the turn signal flashes three times. The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

iDrive, for explanation of concept, refer to page 16.

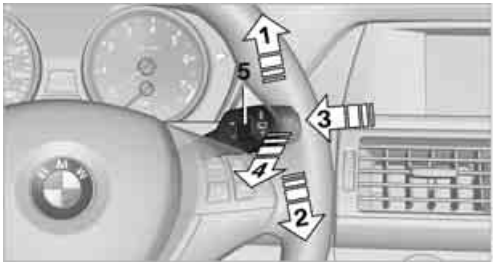
1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Vehicle / Tires" and press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Lighting" is selected and press the controller.

6. Select "Triple turn signal" and press the controller.
   Triple turn signaling is activated.

Washer/wiper system



1 Switching on wipers
2 Switching off wipers or brief wipe
3 Activating/deactivating rain sensor
4 Cleaning windshield and headlamps*
5 Adjusting rain sensor sensitivity level

Switching on wipers

Pull the lever upward, arrow **1**.

The lever automatically returns to its initial position when released.

Normal wiper speed

Press once.
The system reverts to operation in the intermittent mode when the vehicle is stationary.

Fast wiper speed

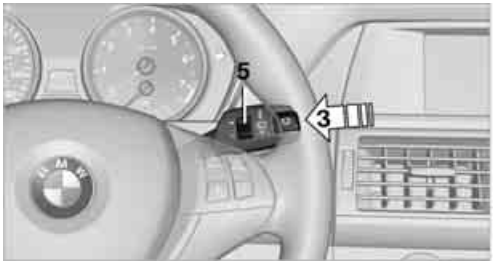
Press twice or press beyond the resistance point.
The system reverts to normal speed when the vehicle is stationary.

CarManuals2.com

Rain sensor*

The wiper operation is controlled automatically as a function of the rain intensity. The rain sensor is located on the windshield, directly in front of the interior rearview mirror.

Activating rain sensor



Press the button, arrow **3**. The LED in the button lights up.

Adjusting rain sensor sensitivity level

Turn the knurled wheel **5**.

Deactivating rain sensor

Press the button again, arrow **3**. The LED goes out.

Deactivate the rain sensor when passing through an automatic car wash. Failure to do so could result in damage caused by undesired wiper activation.◀

Cleaning windshield and headlamps*

Pull the lever, arrow **4**.

The system sprays washer fluid against the windshield and activates the wipers for a brief period.

When the vehicle lighting is switched on, the headlamps are simultaneously washed at appropriate intervals.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Do not use the washers if there is any danger that the fluid will freeze on the windshield. If you do so, your vision could be obscured. To avoid freezing, use a washer fluid antifreeze, refer to Washer fluid. Do not use washing mechanisms when the washer fluid reservoir is empty, otherwise you will damage the washer pump.◀

Windshield washer nozzles

Both windshield washer nozzles are automatically heated with the engine running or the ignition switched on.

Rear window wiper

1 Intermittent mode. When reverse gear is engaged, continuous operation is switched on automatically

2 Cleaning the rear window

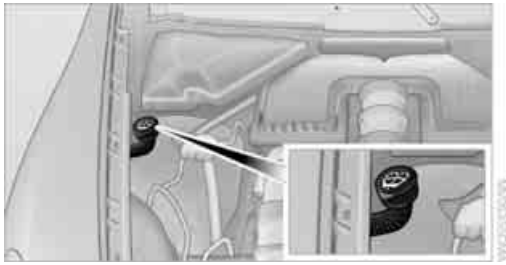
CarManuals2.com

Do not use washing mechanisms when the washer fluid reservoir is empty, otherwise you will damage the washer pump.◀

Washer fluid

Washer fluid antifreeze is flammable. Always keep it well away from sparks and open flames, and store it in tightly closed containers well out of the reach of children. Always observe the instructions for use provided on the containers.◀

Washer fluid reservoir



All washer nozzles are supplied from one reservoir.

Fill with water and – if required – with a washer antifreeze, according to manufacturer's recommendations.

In order to maintain the mixture ratio, mix the washer fluid before filling.◀

Capacity

approx. 6.3 US quarts/6 liters.

Cruise control*

The concept

The cruise control with a braking function is available for use at speeds of approx. 20 mph/ 30 km/h and higher. The vehicle stores and maintains the speed that you set using the lever mounted on the steering column. To keep the specified speed constant, the system brakes if the engine braking effect is not sufficient on a downhill grade.

Do not use the cruise control under driving conditions that do not permit a constant speed, e.g. when driving on winding roads, in heavy traffic or in poor road conditions such as snow, rain, ice, and loose road surface. Otherwise you could lose control of the vehicle and cause an accident.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

One lever for all functions

1 Storing speed and maintaining or increasing

2 Storing speed and maintaining or decreasing

3 Deactivating cruise control

4 Resuming stored setting

Maintaining current speed

Briefly press, arrow **1**, or briefly pull, arrow **2** lever.

The speed currently being driven is stored and maintained. It is indicated on the speedometer and briefly in the instrument cluster.

The controlled speed can drop on uphill grades if the engine output is insufficient. If the engine braking effect is not sufficient on a downhill grade, the system lightly brakes the vehicle.

Increasing desired speed

Repeatedly press the lever up to or beyond the resistance point, arrow **1**, until the desired speed is set.

- ▷ Each time the lever is pressed up to the resistance point, the desired speed increases by approx. 1 mph or 1 km/h.
- ▷ Each time the lever is pressed beyond the resistance point, the desired speed increases by a maximum of 5 mph or 10 km/h.

The system stores the setting and maintains the set speed.

Accelerating with lever

Accelerate slightly:

Press the lever up to the resistance point, arrow **1**, until the desired speed is reached.

Accelerate more rapidly:

Press the lever beyond the resistance point, arrow **1**, until the desired speed is reached.

The vehicle accelerates without pressure on the accelerator pedal. The system stores the setting and maintains the set speed.

Reducing desired speed

Repeatedly pull the lever up to the resistance point or beyond, arrow **2**, until the desired speed is displayed.

- ▷ Each time the lever is pulled up to the resistance point, the desired speed decreases by approx. 1 mph or 1 km/h.
- ▷ Each time the lever is pulled beyond the resistance point, the desired speed is decreased by a maximum of 5 mph or 10 km/h until the minimum speed of 20 mph or 30 km/h is reached.

The system stores the setting and maintains the set speed.

⚠ If the speed is to be considerably reduced, depress the brake, as otherwise a dangerous situation could result due to insufficient deceleration.◀

Deactivating cruise control

Briefly press the lever up or down, arrow **3**. The displays in the speedometer go out.

In addition, the system is automatically deactivated:

- ▷ when braking
- ▷ when transmission position N is engaged
- ▷ when DTC is activated or DSC is deactivated
- ▷ when HDC is activated
- ▷ when DSC or ABS is active

Accelerating does not deactivate the cruise control. After releasing the accelerator pedal,

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

the stored speed is reached and maintained again.

Warning lamp

The warning lamp lights up when the cruise control has automatically been deactivated by braking with the parking brake or by a control intervention by DSC. A message appears on the Control Display.

Resuming stored speed

Briefly press the button, arrow **4**. The stored speed is resumed and maintained.

In the following cases the stored speed value is deleted and can no longer be resumed:

- ▷ in case of an intervention of the driving stability control systems
- ▷ when transmission position N is engaged
- ▷ when the ignition is switched off

Displays in instrument cluster

CarManuals2.com

1 Stored desired speed

2 Selected desired speed appears briefly

If the display --- mph or --- km/h appears briefly in the instrument cluster, then conditions required for operation may not currently be fulfilled.
Retrieving Check Control messages, refer to page 74.◀

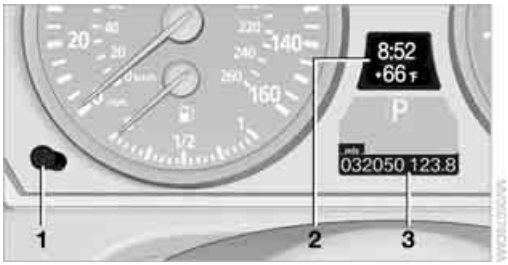
Malfunction

The warning lamp lights up if the system has failed. A message appears on the Control Display. Detailed information is provided from page 74.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Everything under control

Odometer, outside temperature display, clock



1 Button in instrument cluster

2 Outside temperature display and clock

3 Odometer and trip odometer

Button in instrument cluster

▷ With ignition switched on

Press the button:
Resetting trip odometer

Press the button for approx. 5 seconds:
Displaying service requirements, refer to page 71

▷ With ignition switched off

Press the button:
Briefly displaying time, outside temperature and odometer

Units of measure

To set the corresponding unit of measure km or miles for the odometer and for the outside temperature °F or °C, refer to page 79.

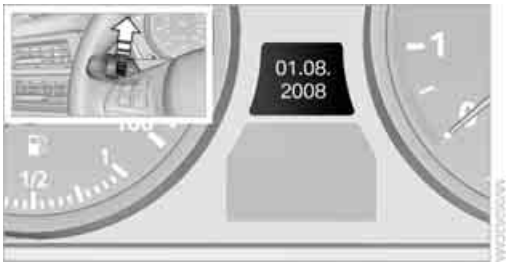
The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Time, date, outside temperature display

From radio readiness the outside temperature and the time are displayed.

To set the time, refer to page 77.

Retrieving date



Press the button on turn signal lever upward; the date appears.

To set the date, refer to page 78.

Pressing the button upward or downward several times changes the display between clock and outside temperature display, date and Check Control messages, refer to page 75.

Outside temperature warning

If the display drops to +37 °F /+3 °C, a signal sounds and a warning lamp lights up. A message appears on the Control Display. There is an increased danger of ice.

⚠ Even at temperatures above +37 °F / +3 °C ice can form. Therefore, drive carefully, e.g. on bridges and sections of road in the shade, otherwise there is an increased accident risk.◀

Odometer and trip odometer

Resetting trip odometer:
Press button **1** in the instrument cluster with the ignition switched on.

When vehicle is parked

To briefly display the time, outside temperature and mileage after the remote control has been removed from the ignition lock:
Press button **1** in the instrument cluster.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Tachometer

Do not operate the engine with the needle in the red overspeed zone of the gauge, refer to arrow. In this range, the fuel supply is interrupted to protect the engine.

Coolant temperature

Should the coolant, and with it the engine become too hot, a warning lamp lights up. In addition, a message appears on the Control Display.

Checking coolant level, refer to page 225.

Energy Control

Displays the current fuel consumption. This allows you to see whether your current driving style is conducive to fuel economy with minimum exhaust emissions.

Fuel gauge

Fuel tank capacity: approx. 22.5 US gal/ 85 liters. You will find information on refueling on page 212.

If the tilt of the vehicle varies for a longer period, when you are driving in mountainous areas, for example, the indicator may fluctuate slightly.

Reserve

After the reserve quantity has been reached, a message briefly appears on the Control Display; the remaining range is shown in the computer. Below a range of approx. 30 miles/50 km, the message remains on the Control Display.

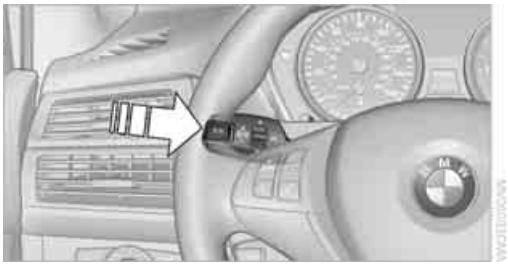
⚠ Refuel as soon as possible once your cruising range falls below 30 miles/ 50 km, otherwise engine functions are not ensured and damage can occur.◀

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Computer

Displays in instrument cluster



To display the information, press the BC button on the turn signal lever.

The following information is displayed in the specified order:

- ▷ Cruising range
- ▷ Average speed
- ▷ Average fuel consumption

Cruising range

Displays the estimated cruising range available with the remaining fuel. The range is projected based on the driving style over the last 20 miles/ 30 km.

CarManuals2.com

⚠ Refuel as soon as possible once your cruising range falls below 30 miles/ 50 km, otherwise engine functions are not ensured and damage can occur.◀

Average speed

Periods with the vehicle parked and the engine stopped are not included in the calculations of average speed.

To reset average speed: press the BC button on the turn signal lever for approx. 2 seconds.

Average fuel consumption

The average fuel consumption is calculated for the time during which the engine is running.

To reset average fuel consumption: press the BC button on the turn signal lever for approx. 2 seconds.

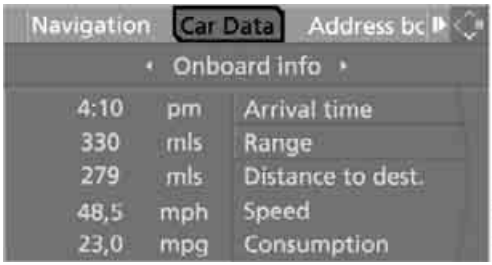
For different routes

You can display the average speed and average consumption for two different routes on the Control Display, refer to the following and to Trip computer*.

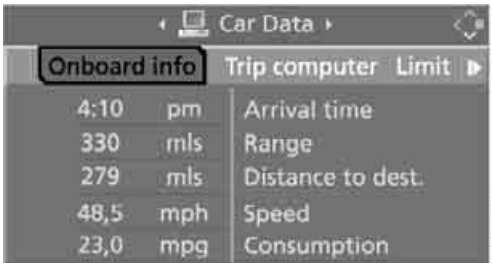
Displays on Control Display

You can also call up the computer via iDrive. For explanation of concept, refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller to the right to open "Navigation".
   Without navigation system*:
   Open "Car Data".
3. Select "Car Data" and press the controller.



4. Select "Onboard info" and press the controller.



- ▷ Estimated time of arrival at destination and remaining distance:
  - ▷ Entering a distance manually in the computer, see below.
  - ▷ Entering a destination in the navigation system*, refer to page 131.
- ▷ Cruising range

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

- Average speed
- Average fuel consumption

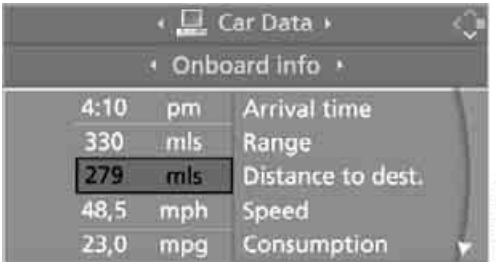
Resetting values

You can reset the values for the average speed and average fuel consumption:

1. Select the respective menu item and press the controller.
2. To confirm your selection, press the controller again.

Entering a distance manually

1. Select "Distance to dest." and press the controller.



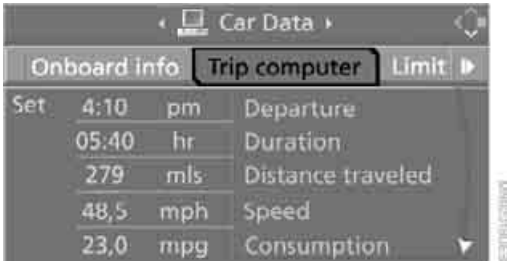
2. Turn the controller to select the distance to your destination.
3. Press the controller to apply the setting.

The distance is automatically preset during the destination guidance of the navigation system*.

Trip computer*

The trip computer is suitable, for example, for a vacation trip.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Open "Navigation".
   Without navigation system*:
   Open "Car Data".
3. Select "Car Data" and press the controller.
4. Select "Trip computer" and press the controller.



- Departure time
- Driving time
- Distance traveled
- Average speed
- Average fuel consumption

Starting or stopping the trip computer, or resetting all values:

1. Select "Set" and press the controller.
2. Select the desired menu item.
3. Press the controller.

Display options

You can display the computer or the trip computer in the assistance window.

1. Move the controller to the right to change to the assistance window and press the controller.

2. Select "Onboard info" or "Trip computer".

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

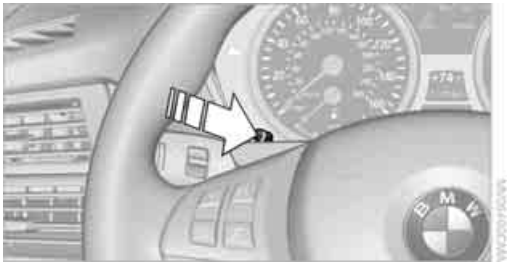
3. Press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

Service requirements

The remaining driving distance and the date for the next maintenance are displayed briefly with the ignition switched on.

To determine the extent of maintenance required, you can also display the remaining distance or the service date individually in the instrument cluster.



1. Press the button in the instrument cluster for approx. 5 seconds until the service requirement is displayed.
2. Press the button repeatedly to display the individual service requirement points.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Displaying service requirements

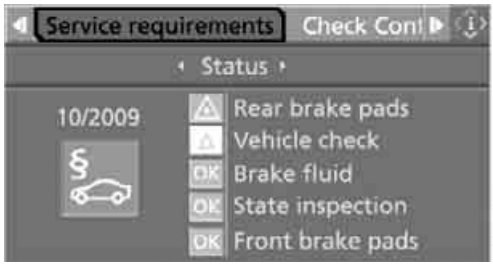
1 Button for selecting display
2 Service requirements
3 Engine oil
4 Legally mandated inspections*
5 Front brake pads
6 Rear brake pads
7 Brake fluid

The sequence of the displayed maintenance can vary. First the data for the next maintenance are displayed.

Additional information

You can select a display of more detailed information on the maintenance scope on the Control Display. For explanation of concept, refer to page 16.

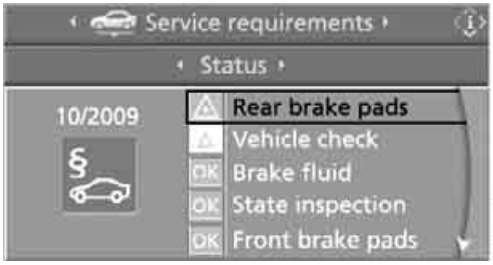
1. Open the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Info sources" and press the controller.
4. Select "Service" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Service requirements" is selected and press the controller.



CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

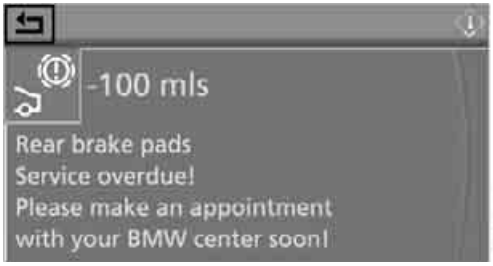
6. Select "Status" and press the controller.



The display shows a list of selected service and maintenance procedures, as well as legally mandated inspections.

You can request more detailed information on every entry.

Select the entry and press the controller.



To exit from the menu:
Select the arrow and press the controller.

Symbols

No service is currently required.

The deadline for service or a legally mandated inspection is approaching. Please arrange a service appointment.

The service deadline has already passed.

Entering dates for legally mandated inspections*

Make sure the date on the Control Display is set correctly, refer to page 78; otherwise, the effectiveness of CBS Condition Based Service is not ensured.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Info sources" and press the controller.
4. Select "Service" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Service requirements" is selected and press the controller.
6. Select "Status" and press the controller.
7. Select "State inspection" and press the controller.

8. Select "Set service date" and press the controller. The month is highlighted.
9. Turn the controller to make the adjustment.

10. Press the controller to apply the setting. The year is highlighted.
11. Turn the controller to make the adjustment.
12. Press the controller to apply the setting. The date entry is stored.

To exit the menu:
Select the arrow and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Check Control

The concept

The Check Control monitors functions in the vehicle and issues a message if there is a malfunction in the monitored systems. This kind of Check Control message consists of indicator and warning lamps in the instrument cluster, and if necessary an acoustic signal and text messages at the bottom of the Control Display.

Indicator and warning lamps

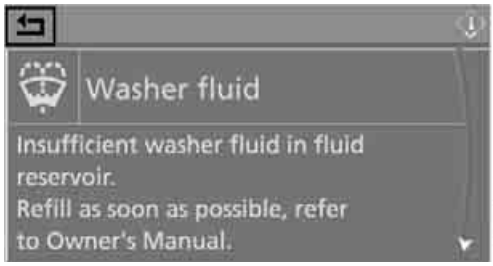
The indicator and warning lamps can light up in different combinations and colors.

⚠ means that a Check Control message has been generated. The symbol continues to be visible even when the Check Control message disappears after a short time. The warning lamps and text messages are stored and can be displayed later, also refer to page 75.

Explanatory text messages

CarManuals2.com

Text messages at the bottom edge of the Control Display explain the meaning of the displayed indicator and warning lamps.

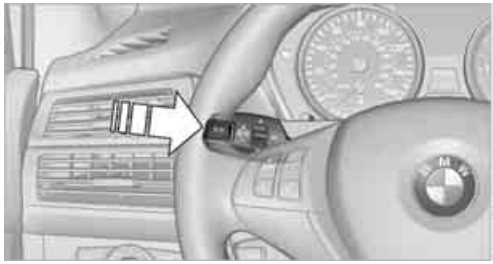


You can display additional information on most Check Control messages later, e.g. on the cause of the malfunction and on corresponding need for action, see below.

In the case of corresponding urgency, this information is displayed immediately when the related lamp lights up.

Exit the displayed information:
Select the arrow and press the controller.

Hiding Check Control messages



Press the button on the turn signal lever.

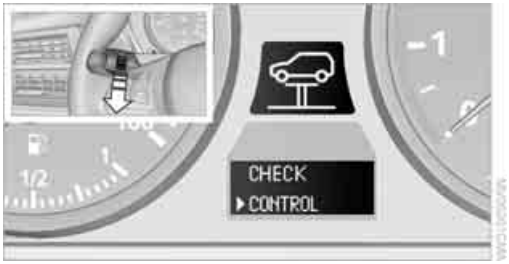
Some Check Control messages remain visible until the malfunctions have been rectified. They

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

cannot be hidden. If a number of malfunctions occur simultaneously, they are displayed in succession.

Other messages are automatically hidden after approx. 20 seconds, but remain stored.

Displaying stored Check Control messages

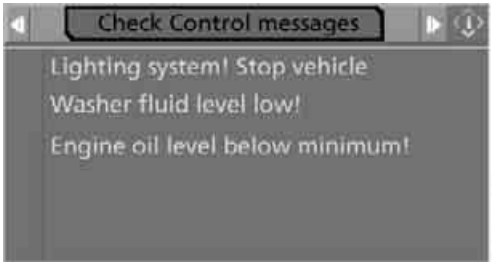


1. Press the button on the turn signal lever downward. "CHECK OK" or the stored Check Control messages appear in the display.
   "CHECK OK" is shown if no messages are present.
   Check Control messages are accompanied by text messages on the Control Display.
2. Press the button to display additional messages, or the time and outside temperature.

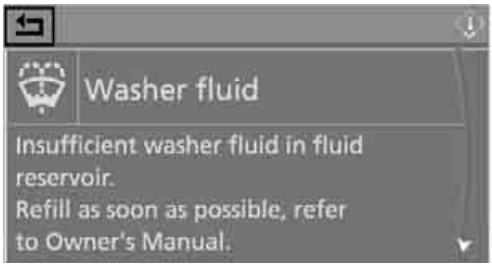
Displaying additional information later

iDrive, for explanation of concept, refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Info sources" and press the controller.
4. Select "Service" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Check Control messages" is selected and press the controller.



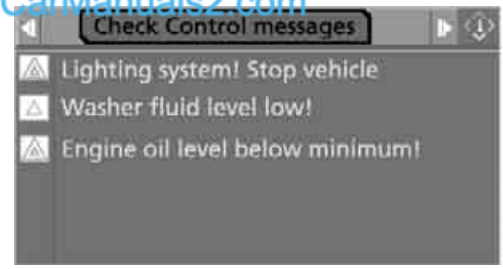
6. Select a text message and press the controller.



To exit the display:
Select the arrow and press the controller.

Indication of malfunction urgency

CarManuals2.com



Depending on your vehicle's equipment, the stored Check Control messages are also displayed with the following symbols:

OK No malfunctions are present in the monitored systems.

Malfunctions are present in the monitored systems. Depending on the malfunction, supplementary information is shown on the Control Display.

The symbols also indicate the status of the service requirements display, refer to page 73.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Speed limit

You can enter a speed and a Check Control message indicates when you have reached this speed. This enables you, for example, to receive warnings if you exceed a speed limit in an urban area.
CarManuals2.com
You are only warned of reaching this speed a second time if your vehicle speed falls below it again by at least 3 mph/5 km/h.

Displaying, setting or changing limit

iDrive, for explanation of concept, refer to page 16.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Open "Navigation".
   Without navigation system*:
   Open "Car Data".
3. Select "Car Data" and press the controller.
4. Select "Limit" and press the controller.

5. Select the speed value and press the controller.
6. Turn the controller to set the limit.
7. Press the controller to apply the setting.
   The limit is automatically activated.

Applying your current speed as limit

Select "Select current speed" and press the controller. The system applies your current speed as the limit.

Activating limit

Select "On" and press the controller.
Limit is automatically activated.

Stopwatch

iDrive, for explanation of concept, refer to page 16.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Open "Navigation".
   Without navigation system*:
   Open "Car Data".
3. Select "Car Data" and press the controller.
4. Select "Stopwatch" and press the controller.

Starting, stopping or resetting

▷ Select "Start" and press the controller.
The stopwatch starts at the displayed time.

▷ Select "Reset" and press the controller.
The stopwatch is reset and it restarts if it was running beforehand.

▷ Select "Stop" and press the controller.
This stops the timer.

Taking an intermediate time reading

Select "Interim time" and press the controller. The interim time appears below the ongoing primary stopwatch count.

▷ All of the remaining functions remain available at all times while the stopwatch is running. The stopwatch continues operation in the background.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Settings on Control Display

iDrive, for explanation of concept, refer to page 16.

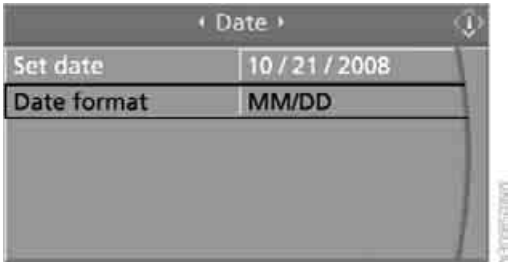
1. Press the **MENU** button once or twice until the start menu appears.

2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Turn the controller until "Settings" is selected and press the controller.

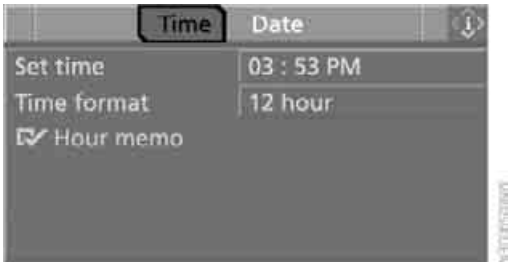
Setting time

1. Turn the controller until "Time / Date" is selected and press the controller.

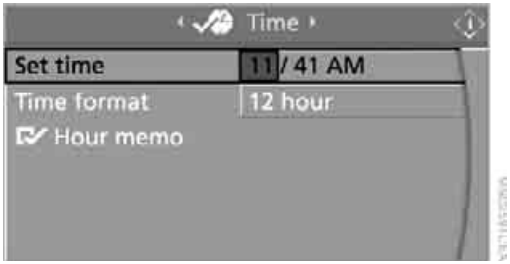
2. Move the controller once to the front if necessary to change to the first field from the top.



3. Turn the controller until "Time" is selected and press the controller.



4. Turn the controller until "Set time" is selected and press the controller.



5. Turn the controller to set the hours and press the controller.
6. Turn the controller to set the minutes and press the controller.

The changed time is stored.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Switching on hour signal*

You will hear three tones just before each full hour.

Select "Hour memo" and press the controller.
The hour signal is activated.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Setting time format

1. Select "Time format" and press the controller.
2. Select the desired format and press the controller.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Setting date

1. Turn the controller until "Time / Date" is selected and press the controller.
2. Select "Date" and press the controller.

3. Select "Set date" and press the controller. The first section of the date display is highlighted, in this case the month.
4. Turn the controller to make the adjustment.
5. Press the controller to apply the setting. The next setting is highlighted.
6. Make the remaining adjustments. After the last adjustment, the date is stored.

Changing date format

1. Select "Date format" and press the controller.
2. Select the desired format and press the controller.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Brightness of Control Display

The brightness is automatically adapted to the ambient lighting conditions. However, you can change the basic setting.

1. Select "Display settings" and press the controller.
2. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Brightness" is selected and press the controller.

3. If necessary, move the controller to the right to select "Display".
4. Turn the controller until the desired setting is selected.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

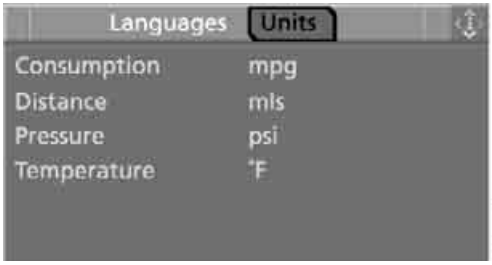
CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Units of measure

You can change the units of measure for consumption, distances, temperature and pressure.

1. Select "Language / Units" and press the controller.
2. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Units" is selected and press the controller.

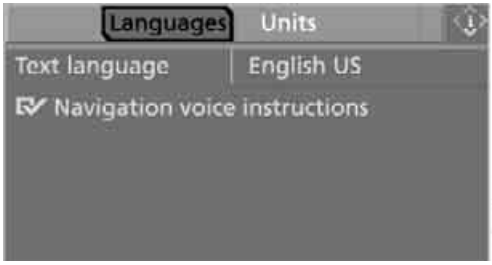


3. Select the menu item to be set and press the controller.
4. Select the desired unit of measure and press the controller.

The settings are stored for the remote control currently in use.

Language on Control Display

1. Select "Language / Units" and press the controller.
2. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Languages" is selected and press the controller.



3. Select "Text language" and press the controller. You can change the language of the text displays.

CarManuals2.com

4. Select and activate the desired language by pressing the controller.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Volume of warning tones*

On vehicles equipped with a single drive, you can increase or decrease the volume of the warning tones, e.g. for the safety belt reminder, compared to the entertainment sound output. The warning tones have a specified minimum and maximum volume that cannot be dropped below or exceeded.

1. Select "Tone / volume" and press the controller.
2. Select "Volume settings" and press the controller.

3. Change to the second field from the top if necessary. Select "Warning tones" and press the controller.
4. If necessary, change to the right-hand field and turn the controller.
   The setting is applied.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Technology for comfort, convenience and safety

PDC Park Distance Control*

The concept

The PDC assists you when you are parking. Acoustic signals and an optical display* alert you to the approach of an object from behind your vehicle. To measure the distance, there are four ultrasonic sensors in each bumper. The range of these sensors is approx. 7 ft/2 m. However, an acoustic warning first sounds for the sensors at the front and at the two rear corners at approx. 24 in/60 cm, and for the center rear sensors at approx. 5 ft/1.50 m.

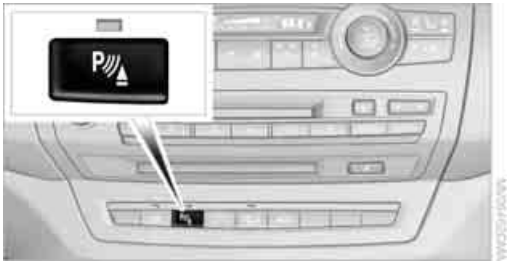
⚠ PDC is a parking aid that can indicate objects when they are approached slowly, as is usually the case when parking. Avoid approaching an object at high speed, otherwise the physical circumstances would mean that the system warning was too late.◀

Automatic activation

Whenever the engine is running or the ignition is on, each time you move the selector lever into position R, the PDC system is activated after approx.1 second.

Wait this short period before driving off.

Manual activation



Press the button, the LED lights up.

Manual deactivation

Press the button again; the LED goes out.

Automatic deactivation

After driving approx. 165 ft/50 m or at over approx. 20 mph/30 km/h, the system is switched off and the LED goes out. You can reactivate the system manually as needed.

Warning tones

When nearing an object, the position is correspondingly indicated by an interval tone.
As a result, an object detected, for example, to the left rear of the vehicle will be indicated by a warning tone from the left rear speaker.
As the distance between vehicle and object decreases, the intervals between the tones become shorter. If the distance to the nearest object falls to below roughly 1 ft/30 cm, then a continuous tone sounds.

An intermittent tone is interrupted after approx. 3 seconds:

- ▷ if you remain in front of an object that was only detected by one of the corner sensors
- ▷ if you drive parallel to a wall

Adjusting

You can adjust the volume of the warning tones if the vehicle is equipped with a single drive, refer to page 79.

Malfunction

The LED in the button flashes and a message appears on the Control Display. PDC is malfunctioning. Have the system checked.

To prevent this problem, keep the sensors clean and free of ice or snow in order to ensure that they will continue to operate effectively. Do not spray the sensors with high-pressure cleaners for long periods and maintain a distance of at least 4 in/10 cm to them.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

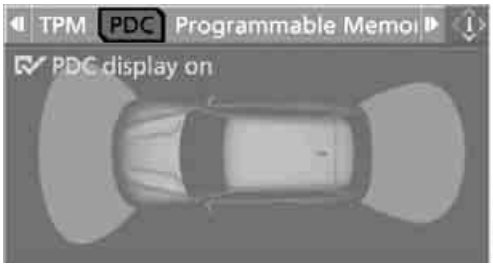
PDC with visual warning*

You can also have the system show distances to objects on the Control Display. Objects that are farther away are already shown there before a signal tone sounds.
The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

If the vehicle is equipped with a backup camera, refer to the display of the backup camera on page 83.

iDrive, for explanation of concept, refer to page 16.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Vehicle / Tires" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "PDC" is selected and press the controller.



6. Select "PDC display on" and press the controller.
   The PDC screen is activated.

The display appears on the Control Display as soon as PDC is activated.

System limits

Even with PDC, final responsibility for estimating the distance between the vehicle and any obstructions always remains with the driver. Even when sensors are provided, there is a blind spot in which objects can no longer be detected. The system's detection of objects is also subject to the physical limits that apply to all forms of ultrasonic measurement, such as those encountered with tow bars and trailer couplings, thin or wedge-shaped objects etc. Low objects already displayed, e.g. a curb, can also disappear from the detection area of the sensors again before or after a continuous tone already sounds. Higher, protruding objects, e.g. ledges, cannot be detected. Loud sources of sound, inside and outside the vehicle, could drown out the PDC signal tone.◀

Backup camera*

The concept

The backup camera in the liftgate displays the area behind your vehicle on the Control Display.

Also check the traffic situation around the vehicle during parking and maneuvering with direct vision, as otherwise danger of an accident could result, for example, from road users or objects located outside the picture area of the backup camera.◀

Switching on

Automatically

CarManuals2.com

Engage transmission position R with the engine running or the ignition switched on.

Manually

Press the button.
PDC is activated at the same time, refer to page 80.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Switching off

Automatically

When driving forward from a speed of approx. 12 mph/20 km/h or from a driven distance of approx. 164 ft/50 m.

Manually

Press the button again; the LED goes out.

Driver assistance functions

The following functions can improve the effect of the backup camera depending on the situation.

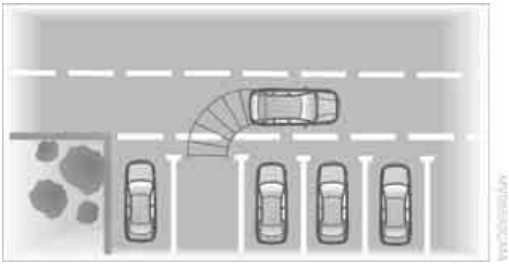
They can only be activated when the tailgates are completely closed.

Lane lines

The lane lines are shown in the picture of the backup camera. They help you to estimate the space required when parking and maneuvering on level roads.

To estimate the space required, turn the steering wheel so that the lane lines guide into the parking space or the maneuvering area you have chosen.

CarManuals2.com



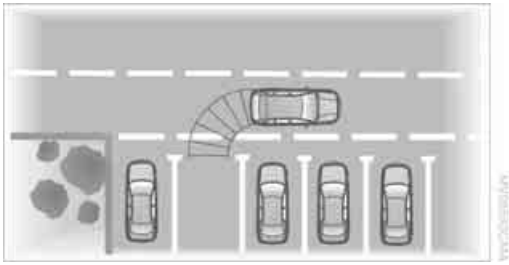
The lane lines are dependent on the current steering angle and are continuously adjusted to the steering wheel movements.

Turning circle lines

The static turning circle lines are displayed in the picture of the backup camera and show you the course of the smallest possible turning circle on level roads.

Using lane and turning circle lines

1. Position the vehicle so that the turning circle line guide within the limits of the parking space.



2. Turn the steering wheel so that the lane lines cover the corresponding turning circle line.

This results in a steering wheel adjustment that makes full use of the smallest possible turning circle of the vehicle when parking.

Virtual camera pan

The picture area is dependent on the current speed:
At low speeds, the camera view is panned toward the street, and at higher speeds toward the horizon.
This enables the currently relevant picture area to be shown enlarged on the Control Display.

To activate the virtual camera pan, select the camera view "Camera view: full screen".

Obstacle marking

Spatially shaped markings are shown in the picture of the backup camera. Their stepped colors correspond to the markings of the Park Distance Control and support you in estimating the distance to the object shown.

The obstacle marking is deactivated when driving in reverse from approx. 12 mph/20 km/h.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Activating driver assistance functions

With backup camera switched on

iDrive, for explanation of concept, refer to page 16.

1. Press the controller.
2. Select the desired function and press the controller.

With backup camera switched off

1. Open the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Vehicle / Tires" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Maneuvering aids" is selected and press the controller.

6. Select "Settings" and press the controller.

7. Select the desired functions and press the controller.
   You can also adjust the brightness of the camera view.

   The settings are used for the remote control currently in use.

Displays

You can display the picture of the backup camera in various ways.
In addition, you can also display the PDC Park Distance Control, refer to page 81.

- ▷ "Camera view: full screen"
  The picture of the backup camera is shown on the entire Control Display.
- ▷ "Camera view: main window"
  The picture of the backup camera is shown in the main window of the Control Display.
- ▷ "PDC in main window only"
  PDC is shown in the main window of the Control Display.

Selecting displays

1. Select "Maneuvering aids" and press the controller, refer to Activating functions.
2. Turn the controller until "View selection" is selected and press the controller.

3. Select the desired display and press the controller. The setting is used for the remote control currently in use.

Cleaning backup camera

The lens of the backup camera is located in the liftgate over the license plate.

The picture quality of the backup camera may be impaired by dirt. Clean the lens with a moist, non-abrasive cloth.

In case of frost, a heater in the lens is switched on automatically.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Driving stability control systems

Your BMW is equipped with an extended array of systems designed to enhance and maintain vehicle stability under extreme conditions.

ABS Antilock Brake System

ABS prevents locking of the wheels during braking. Safe steering response is maintained even during full braking. Active safety is thus increased.

ABS is operational every time you start the engine. Braking safely, refer to page 123.

CBC Cornering Brake Control

When braking during curves or when braking during a lane change, driving stability and steering response are improved further.

Electronic brake-force distribution

The system controls the brake pressure in the rear wheels to ensure stable braking behavior.

DBC Dynamic Brake Control

When you apply the brakes rapidly, this system automatically produces the maximum braking force boost and thus helps to achieve the shortest possible braking distance during full braking. This system exploits all of the benefits provided by ABS.

Do not reduce the pressure on the brake pedal for the duration of the full braking.

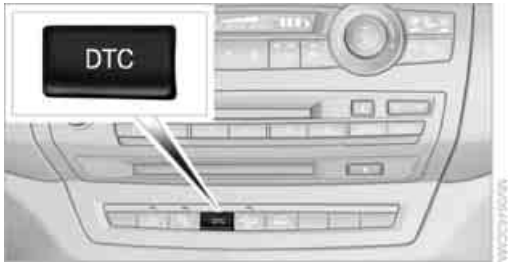
DSC Dynamic Stability Control

DSC prevents traction loss in the driving wheels when starting off and accelerating. DSC also identifies unstable driving conditions, such as a loss of traction at the rear of the vehicle or sliding of the vehicle in its front wheels. In these cases, DSC helps the vehicle maintain a safe course within physical limits by reducing engine output and through braking actions in the individual wheels.

The laws of physics cannot be repealed, even with DSC. An appropriate driving style remains the responsibility of the driver. Therefore, do not reduce the additional safety margin further by taking risks.◀

CarManuals2.com

Deactivating DSC



Press the button until the DSC indicator lamp in the instrument cluster lights up, but not longer than approx. 10 seconds. DTC Dynamic Traction Control and DSC are deactivated together. Stabilizing interventions are now not carried out.

A message appears on the Control Display. Please note any supplementary information that appears there.

To increase vehicle stability, activate DSC again as soon as possible.

Activating DSC

Press the button; the indicator lamp in the instrument cluster goes out.

For better control

The indicator lamp flashes:
DSC controls the drive forces and brake forces.

The indicator lamps light up:
DSC is deactivated.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

DTC Dynamic Traction Control

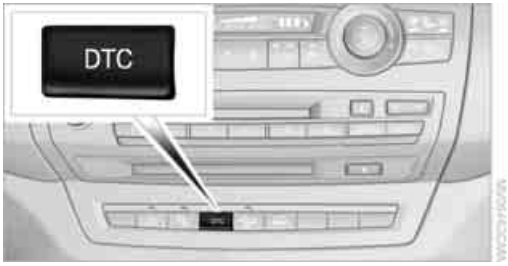
DTC is a version of DSC in which the drive output is optimized for particular road conditions, e.g. unplowed snow-covered roads. The system assures the maximal drive output, but with reduced driving stability. It is therefore necessary to drive with appropriate caution.

CarManuals2.com

You may find it useful to briefly activate DTC under the following special circumstances:

- ▷ When driving in sand, on snowy inclines, in slush or on unplowed, snow-covered road surfaces
- ▷ When rocking a stuck vehicle free or starting off in deep snow, sand or on loose ground
- ▷ When driving with snow chains*

Activating DTC



Press the button briefly; the DTC indicator lamp in the instrument cluster lights up.

For better control

The indicator lamp flashes:
DTC controls the drive forces and brake forces.

The indicator lamp lights up:
DTC is activated.

Deactivating DTC

Press the button again; the DTC indicator lamp in the instrument cluster goes out.

xDrive

xDrive is the 4-wheel drive system of your X5. The combined effects of xDrive and DSC further optimize the traction and dynamic driving characteristics. The 4-wheel drive system xDrive variably distributes the drive forces to the front and rear axle depending on the driving situation and prevailing road conditions.

HDC Hill Descent Control

The concept

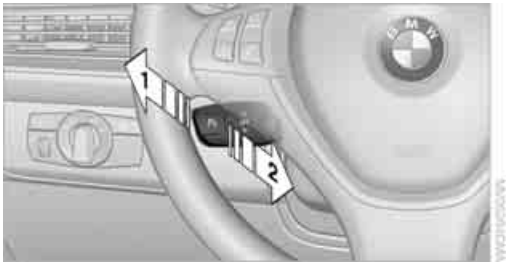
HDC is a system for driving downhill in steep terrain. This system reduces vehicle speed on steep downhill gradients, thus allowing you to maintain even better control of your BMW under these conditions. The vehicle moves at approximately walking speed without active intervention from the driver.

HDC is available for activation at vehicle speeds below approx. 22 mph/35 km/h. When driving down steep hills with a speed below approx. 22 mph/35 km/h, the vehicle reduces speed automatically down to approximately walking speed, approx. 5 mph/8 km/h, and then maintains this speed at a constant.

Only use HDC in transmission position D or R.

Increasing or reducing speed

You can use the accelerator or brakes to vary this automatically controlled speed within a range extending from approx. 3 mph/5 km/h to 15 mph/25 km/h.
You can specify a target speed within the same range by using the lever of the cruise control.



1 Increasing speed

2 Reducing speed

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Activating HDC

Press the button; the LED lights up.
The HDC display is shown in the instrument cluster.

The LED flashes when the brakes are applied automatically.

Deactivating HDC

Press the button again. The LED and the HDC display go out.

HDC is also activated at speeds over approx. 37 mph/60 km/h.

Displays in instrument cluster

1 Display for target speed

2 HDC display

Malfunction

HDC is temporarily unavailable in the following situations due to a high brake temperature:

- ▷ The LED in the button and the display HDC go out during HDC operation.
- ▷ The LED in the button and the HDC display do not light up when the button is pressed.

Malfunction of driving stability control systems

When driving on poor roads, avoid using full throttle or pressing the accelerator beyond the kick-down point and also avoid heavy braking. Otherwise, the drive train may be damaged or accidents can occur.◀

Adaptive Drive*

The concept

Adaptive Drive reduces undesirable vehicle movements that occur when driving on rough roads or with a dynamic driving style. Maximum driving comfort and driving dynamics are achieved in this way.

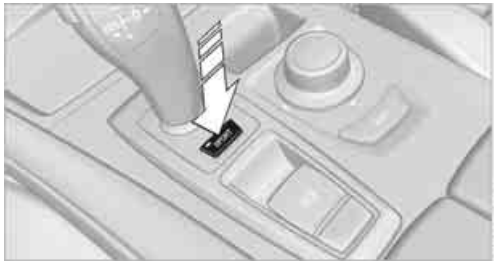
Chassis and suspension tuning

You can choose between two types of chassis and suspension tuning.

- ▷ Normal:
  The comfortable chassis and suspension tuning setting offers optimum comfort when traveling.
- ▷ Sport:
  The sportier chassis and suspension tuning setting offers increased vehicle agility.

CarManuals2.com

Selecting chassis and suspension tuning



Press the button.
The system switches between the two chassis and suspension tuning settings.

- ▷ Sport:
  The LED in the button lights up and SPORT is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

▷ Normal:
The LED in the button goes out.

The selection of the chassis and suspension tuning setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

CarManuals2.com

Self-leveling suspension*

Malfunction

The warning lamp for self-leveling suspension lights up yellow and a message is shown on the Control Display. A malfunction has occurred in the self-leveling suspension. Stop and check the vehicle. If it is considerably lower at the rear than at the front, and possibly also on one side – rear left compared to rear right –, proceed to the nearest BMW Sports Activity Vehicle Center or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel. Drive with appropriate caution in the meantime. The vehicle has reduced ground clearance and driving comfort may be noticeably reduced. Even if the orientation of the vehicle is normal, when a malfunction is indicated on the display, you should proceed to the nearest BMW Sports Activity Vehicle Center or a workshop that works according to BMW guidelines and uses appropriately trained personnel.

FTM Flat Tire Monitor*

The concept

The Flat Tire Monitor keeps track of the inflation pressures in the tires as you drive. The system provides an alert whenever the inflation pressure drops significantly in relation to the pressure in another tire.

In the event of a pressure loss, the rolling radius and therefore the rotation speed of the wheels change. This change is detected and is reported as a flat tire.

Functional requirement

In order to assure the reliable reporting of a flat tire, the system must be initialized for the correct tire inflation pressure.

The initialization must be repeated after each time the tire inflation pressure is corrected and after every tire or wheel change.◀

System limits

The Flat Tire Monitor cannot indicate sudden severe tire damage caused by outside factors and does not detect a natural, even pressure drop in all four tires.◀

In the following situations, the system could be delayed or malfunction:

- ▷ System has not been initialized
- ▷ Driving on snowy or slippery road surface
- ▷ Sporty driving style: slip in the drive wheels, high lateral acceleration
- ▷ Driving with snow chains*

When you are driving with the compact wheel* the Flat Tire Monitor is unable to function.

Initializing system

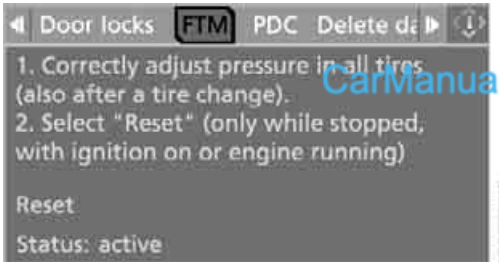
The initialization finishes during driving, which can be interrupted at any time. When driving resumes, the initialization is continued automatically. Do not initialize the system when driving with snow chains* or with the compact wheel*.◀

iDrive, for explanation of concept, refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Vehicle / Tires" and press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "FTM" is selected and press the controller.



6. Start the engine, but do not start driving.
7. Select "Reset" and press the controller.
8. Select "Yes" and press the controller. The message "resetting FTM ..." is displayed.

9. Start to drive.

The initialization finishes during driving. "Status:active" is displayed on the Control Display.

Indication of a flat tire

The warning lamp lights up red. A message appears on the Control Display. In addition, an acoustic signal sounds. There is a flat tire or extensive inflation pressure loss.

If you have deactivated DSC, it will be activated automatically.

1. Cautiously reduce speed to below 50 mph/ 80 km/h. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers. Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.
   In case of further air loss of the defective wheel, its position will be indicated to you on the Control Display.

If the vehicle is not equipped with run-flat tires as intended at the factory, refer to page 220, do not continue driving. Continuing to drive with a flat tire could cause severe accidents.◀

2. At the next opportunity, check the air pressure in all four tires.

If the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the Flat Tire Monitor may not have been initialized. The system must then be initialized.◀

3. In the event of complete tire pressure loss, 0 psi/0 kPa, you can estimate the possible distance for continued driving on the basis of the following guide values:
   - With a light load:
     1 to 2 persons without luggage:
     approx. 155 miles/250 km
   - With a medium load:
     2 persons, cargo bay full, or
     4 persons without luggage:
     approx. 94 miles/150 km
   - With a full load:
     4 or more persons, cargo bay full:
     approx. 30 miles/50 km

Drive reservedly and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h. In the event of pressure loss, vehicle handling changes. This includes reduced tracking stability in braking, extended braking distance and altered natural steering characteristics.
If unusual vibrations or loud noises occur while the vehicle is being driven, this can indicate final failure of the damaged tire. Reduce speed and stop at a suitable location as soon as possible, otherwise pieces of the tire could become detached and cause an accident. Do not continue driving, but instead contact the BMW Sports Activity Vehicle Center.◀

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

TPM Tire Pressure Monitor*

The concept

TPM checks the tire inflation pressure in the four mounted tires. The system reports when the tire inflation pressure has dropped considerably in one or several tires.

Functional requirement

In order to assure the reliable reporting of a flat tire, the system must have been reset with the correct tire inflation pressure.

Always use wheels with TPM electronics, otherwise fault-free operation of the system is not ensured.

▷ Reset the system again after each correction of the tire inflation pressure and after every tire or wheel change.◀

System limits

⚠ TPM cannot announce sudden serious tire damage caused by external influences.◀

The system does not function properly if it has not been reset, e.g. a flat tire is reported despite correct tire inflation pressures.

The system is inactive and cannot display a flat tire if a wheel has been mounted without TPM electronics, e.g. a compact wheel*, or if TPM is temporarily interfered with by other systems or devices which use the same radio frequency.

Status display on Control Display

The tire and system status is indicated by the color of the tires.

TPM takes the fact that the tire pressure changes during driving into account. A correction is only required if requested by TPM with the color.

Green

The tire pressure matches the learned set state.

"TPM active" is displayed on the Control Display.

One wheel is yellow

Flat tire or a major drop in inflation pressure in the indicated tire. A message appears on the Control Display.

All wheels are yellow

Flat tire or a major drop in inflation pressure in several tires. A message appears on the Control Display.

Gray

The system cannot detect a flat tire.

Reasons for this can be:

- ▷ TPM is being reset
- ▷ Temporary interference due to systems or devices which use the same radio frequency
- ▷ Malfunction

Resetting system

▷ Reset the system again after each correction of the tire inflation pressure and after every tire or wheel change.◀

Resetting finishes during driving, which can be interrupted at any time. When driving resumes, resetting is continued automatically. Do not reset the system when driving with a compact wheel*.

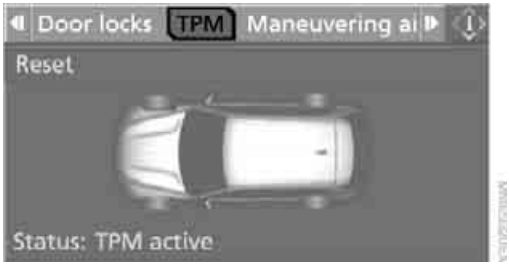
iDrive, for explanation of concept, refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Vehicle / Tires" and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "TPM" is selected and press the controller.



6. Start the engine, but do not start driving.
7. Select "Reset" and press the controller.
8. Select "Yes" and press the controller.

9. Start to drive.
   The tires are shown in gray and "Resetting TPM..." is displayed.

After a few minutes of driving, the set tire inflation pressures in the tires are applied as the set values to be monitored. Resetting finishes during driving. The tires are shown in green on the Control Display and "Status: TPM active" is displayed.

▷ If a flat tire is detected during resetting and applying the tire inflation pressures, all tires are shown in yellow on the Control Display. The message "Tire low!" is displayed.◀

Message with low tire inflation pressure

The warning lamp lights up yellow. A message appears on the Control Display. In addition, an acoustic signal sounds. There is a flat tire or extensive inflation pressure loss.

1. Cautiously reduce speed to below 50 mph/80 km/h. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers. Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

   ⚠ If the vehicle is not equipped with run-flat tires as intended at the factory, refer to page 220, do not continue driving. Continuing to drive with a flat tire could cause severe accidents.◀

2. In the event of complete tire pressure loss, 0 psi/0 kPa, you can estimate the possible distance for continued driving on the basis of the following guide values:
   - ▷ With a light load:
     1 to 2 persons without luggage:
     approx. 155 miles/250 km
   - ▷ With a medium load:
     2 persons, cargo bay full, or
     4 persons without luggage:
     approx. 95 miles/150 km
   - ▷ With a full load:
     4 or more persons, cargo bay full:
     approx. 30 miles/50 km

⚠ Drive reservedly and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h. In the event of pressure loss, vehicle handling changes. This includes reduced tracking stability in braking, extended braking distance and altered natural steering characteristics.
If unusual vibrations or loud noises occur while the vehicle is being driven, this can indicate final failure of the damaged tire. Reduce speed and stop at a suitable location as soon as possible, otherwise pieces of the tire could become detached and cause an accident. Do not continue driving, but instead contact the BMW Sports Activity Vehicle Center.◀

Malfunction

The yellow warning lamp flashes and then lights up continuously. The tires are shown in gray on the Control Display and a message is displayed. No flat tire can be detected.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

A message like this is displayed in the following situations:

- In case of a malfunction:
  Have the system checked
- If a wheel without TPM electronics is mounted, e.g. a compact wheel*
- If TPM is temporarily interfered with by other systems or devices which use the same radio frequency

Explanation according to the NHTSA/ FMVSS 138 Tire Pressure Monitoring Systems

Each tire, including the spare*, should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires. As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system, TPMS, that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires are significantly underinflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly underinflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability. Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle startups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

CarManuals2.com

Active steering*

The concept

The active steering actively varies the steering angle of the front wheels in relation to the steering wheel movements. In addition, it also varies the steering force required for steering depending on the vehicle's speed.

When you are driving in the low road speed range, e.g. in a town or when parking, the steering angle increases, i.e. the steering becomes very direct. In the higher speed range, on the other hand, the steering angle is reduced more and more. This improves the handling capability of your BMW over the entire speed range.

In critical situations, the system can make targeted corrections to the steering angle provided by the driver and thus stabilize the vehicle before the driver intervenes.

Malfunction

The warning lamp lights up yellow and a message is shown on the Control Display. The active steering is no longer operational. At low speeds, greater steering wheel movements are required, whereas at higher speeds, the vehicle reacts more sensitively to steering wheel movements. The stability-promoting intervention can also be deactivated. Proceed cautiously and drive defensively. Have the system checked.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Brake force display

The brake lamps light up in two stages depending on how strongly you brake.

- Normal braking
  The brake lamps and the center brake lamp light up.
- Heavy breaking
  The brake lamps in the liftgate also light up.

Airbags

CarManuals2.com

The following airbags are located under the marked covers:

1 Front airbags

2 Head airbags

3 Side airbags in backrests

Protective action

To ensure that the safety systems continue to provide optimized protection, please observe the adjustment instructions on page 40.◀

The front airbags help protect the driver and front passenger by responding to frontal impacts in which safety belts alone cannot provide adequate restraint. When needed, the head and side airbags help provide protection in the event of side impact. The relevant side airbag supports the side upper body area. The head air bag supports the head.

The airbags are deliberately not triggered in every impact situation, e.g. less severe accidents or rear-end collisions.

Do not apply adhesive materials to the cover panels of the airbags, cover them or modify them in any other way. Do not attempt to remove the airbag restraint system from the vehicle. Do not modify or tamper with either the wiring or the individual components in the airbag system. This category includes the upholstery in the center of the steering wheel, on the instrument panel, the doors and the roof pillars along with the sides of the headliner. Do not attempt to remove or dismantle the steering wheel. Do not touch the individual components immediately after the system has been triggered, because there is a danger of burns.
In the event of malfunctions, deactivation, or triggering of the airbag restraint system, have the testing, repair, removal, and disposal of airbag generators executed only by a BMW Sports

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Activity Vehicle Center or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel and has the required explosives licenses. Unprofessional attempts to service the system could lead to failure in an emergency or undesired airbag activation, either of which could result in personal injury.◀

Warnings and information on the airbags is also provided on the sun visors.

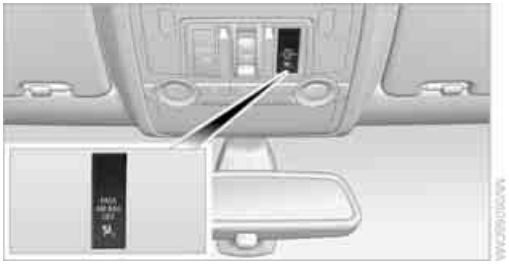
Automatic deactivation of front passenger airbags

The occupation of the seat is detected by evaluating the impression on the occupied seat surface of the front passenger seat. The front and side airbags on the front passenger side are activated or deactivated accordingly by the system.

▷ The current status of the front passenger airbags, i.e. deactivated or activated, is indicated by the indicator lamp over the interior rearview mirror, refer to Operating state of front passenger airbags in the following.◀

⚠ Before transporting a child on the front passenger seat, observe the safety information and handling instructions under Transporting children safely, refer to page 52.
The front and side airbags on the front passenger side can be deactivated for teenagers and adults in certain sitting positions; then the indicator lamp for the front passenger airbags lights up. In these cases, change the sitting position so that the front passenger airbags are activated and the indicator lamp goes out. If the desired status cannot be produced by changing the sitting position, transport the corresponding person on the rear seat. Do not fit seat covers, seat cushion padding, ball mats or other items onto the front passenger seat unless they are specifically recommended by BMW. Do not lay objects under the seat which could press against the seat from below. Otherwise a correct evaluation of the occupied seat surface cannot be ensured.◀

Operating state of front passenger airbags



Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the arrangement of the switches and indicator lamps may differ somewhat.

The indicator lamp for the front passenger airbags indicates the operating status of the front and side airbags on the front passenger side depending on the seat occupation. The indicator lamp shows whether the front passenger airbags are activated or deactivated.

- ▷ The indicator lamp lights up when a child in a child restraint system intended for the purpose is properly detected on the seat. The front and side airbags on the front passenger side are not activated.
- ▷ The indicator lamp does not light up when, for example, a correctly seated person of sufficient height is detected on the seat. The front and side airbags on the front passenger side are activated.
- ▷ The indicator lamp does not light up when the seat is empty.
  However, the front and side airbags on the front passenger side are not activated.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Operational readiness of airbag system

From radio readiness, refer to page 56, the warning lamp lights up briefly, indicating the operational readiness of the entire airbag system and the safety belt tensioners.

Airbag system malfunction

- ▷ Warning lamp does not light up from radio readiness.
- ▷ Warning lamp lights up continuously.

⚠ Have the airbag system checked immediately in case of a malfunction, otherwise there is a danger that the airbag system may not respond in the expected manner in an accident despite an impact of corresponding intensity.◀

Head-Up Display*

The concept

With the Head-Up Display important information is projected into the driver's field of view, e.g. navigation instructions. This enables you to take in this information without looking away from the road.

CarManuals2.com

Switching on/off

Press the button.

1 Navigation information or Check Control messages

2 Cruise control

3 Speed

Selecting displays

iDrive, for explanation of concept, refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Display settings" and press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Head-Up Display" is selected and press the controller.
6. Change into the second field from the top. Turn the controller until "Head-Up Display" is selected and press the controller.
7. Select desired information of Head-Up Display.

8. Press the controller.
   The information is shown on the Head-Up Display.

The settings are stored for the remote control currently in use.

Adjusting brightness and height of display

CarManuals2.com

The brightness of the display is automatically adapted to the ambient lighting conditions. However, you can change the base setting. With the low beams switched on, the brightness can also be adjusted with the knurled wheel of the instrument lighting.

iDrive, for explanation of concept, refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Display settings" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Head-Up Display" is selected and press the controller.
6. Change into the second field from the top. Turn the controller until "Brightness / Position" is selected and press the controller.

7. If necessary, move the controller to the left or right to select "Brightness" or "Picture position".
8. Turn the controller until the desired setting is selected.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Notes

The visibility of the displays in the Head-Up Display is influenced by:

- ▷ Sunglasses with certain polarization filters
- ▷ Certain sitting positions
- ▷ Objects on the cover of the Head-Up Display
- ▷ Wet road surface and unfavorable lighting conditions

If the image is distorted, have the basic setting checked at a BMW Sport Activity Vehicle Center.

Special windshield

The windshield is part of the system. The shape of the windshield complies with the requirements of the Head-Up Display to enable a precise display. A film in the windshield prevents the double images from being displayed. Windshield replacement should be carried out by a BMW Sports Activity Vehicle Center or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Care instructions

You can find everything you need to know on this topic by consulting the separate Caring for your vehicle brochure.

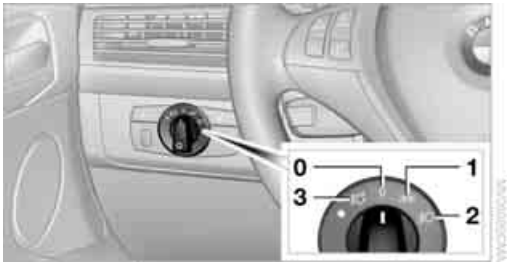
Only clean the cover of the Head-Up Display with a soft, lint-free cloth or with a display cleaning cloth, otherwise damage may result.◀

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Lamps

Parking lamps/low beams



0 Lights off and daytime running lamps*

1 Parking lamps and daytime running lamps*

2 Low beams and courtesy lamps

3 Automatic headlamp control*, daytime running lamps*, courtesy lamps, Adaptive Head Light*

Parking lamps

In position **1**, the front, rear and side vehicle lighting is switched on. You can use the parking lamps for parking.

The parking lamps drain the battery. Do not leave them switched on for long periods of time, otherwise it may no longer be possible to start the engine. It is better to switch on the roadside parking lamps on one side, refer to page 99.◀

Low beams

The low beams light up when the light switch is in position **2** and the ignition is on.

If the light switch remains in position **2**, the exterior lamps are switched off automatically when the driver's door is opened while the ignition is off.

Switch on the parking lamps if required as described under Parking lamps.

Automatic headlamp control*

With the daytime running lamps activated, refer to page 98, the daytime running lamps are switched on in position **3** with the ignition switched on. The system automatically switches over to the low beams depending on the ambient light, e.g. in a tunnel, at dawn and dusk and in case of precipitation. The LED next to the symbol lights up when the low beams are on.

When driving into a tunnel with bright overhead lighting, switching on of the lights may be delayed.
A blue sky with the sun low on the horizon can cause the lights to be switched on.

The low beams remain switched on independent of the ambient lighting conditions when you switch on the fog lamps*.◀

If desired, the light switch can be left in position **3**. The exterior lighting is automatically switched off after parking the vehicle.

The automatic headlamp control cannot serve as a substitute for your personal judgment in determining when the lamps should be switched on in response to ambient lighting conditions. For example, the sensors cannot detect fog or hazy weather. To avoid safety risks, you should always switch on the low beams manually under these conditions.◀

Courtesy lamps

If, when parking the vehicle, you leave the light switch in position **2** or **3**, the parking lamps and the interior lamps light up for a certain time when the vehicle is unlocked.

Pathway lighting

When you activate the headlamp flasher after parking the vehicle and switching off the lamps, the low beams will come on for a brief period. You can set the duration or deactivate the function via iDrive.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

iDrive, for explanation of concept, refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Vehicle / Tires" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Lighting" is selected and press the controller.

6. Select "Pathway lighting" and press the controller.
7. Turn the controller to select the desired duration.
8. Press the controller to apply the setting.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Daytime running lamps*

The daytime running lamps light up in the position lights off, parking lamps or automatic headlamp control. They have a lower light output than the low beams.

If desired, the light switch can be left in position **3**. The exterior lighting is automatically switched off after parking the vehicle. If the light switch remains in the parking lamp position, the parking lamps light up after the ignition is switched off.

Switch on the parking lamps if required as described under Parking lamps.

CarManuals2.com

Activating/deactivating daytime running lamps*

iDrive, for explanation of concept, refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Vehicle / Tires" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Lighting" is selected and press the controller.

6. Select "Daytime running lamps" and press the controller.

   Daytime running lamps are switched on.
   The setting is used for the remote control currently in use.

Adaptive Head Light*

The concept

Adaptive Head Light is a variable headlamp control system that enables better illumination of the road surface. Depending on the steering angle and other parameters, the light from the headlamp follows the course of the road.

Turning lamps

In tight curves, e.g. serpentines, or when turning, one of the two front fog lamps is also switched on up to a speed of approx. 45 mph/ 70 km/h. This provides improved illumination of the area inside the curve.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Activating Adaptive Head Light and turning lamps

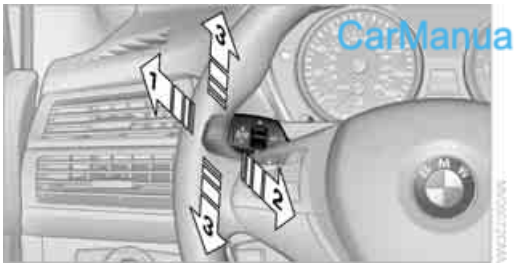
Turn the light switch to position **3**, refer to page 97.
The Adaptive Head Light and the turning lamps are active. The automatic headlamp control is switched on.

To avoid dazzling oncoming traffic, the Adaptive Head Light is not active when driving in reverse and points toward the passenger side when the vehicle is stopped. When driving in reverse, only the turning lamps are active on both sides.

Malfunction

The LED next to the symbol for automatic headlamp control flashes. Adaptive Head Light is malfunctioning or has failed. Have the system checked as soon as possible.

High beams/ roadside parking lamps



1 High beams

2 Headlamp flasher

3 Roadside parking lamps

Roadside parking lamps, left or right*

You also enjoy the option of lighting up just one side of your vehicle when parking.

Switching on

After parking the vehicle, press the lever up or down beyond the resistance point, arrow **3**.

▷ The roadside parking lamps drain the battery. Do not leave them switched on for long periods of time, otherwise it may no longer be possible to start the engine.◀

Switching off

Briefly press the lever in the opposite direction up to the resistance point, arrow **3**.

Fog lamps*

The parking lamps or low beams must be switched on for the fog lamps to operate. The green indicator lamp in the instrument cluster lights up whenever the fog lamps are on.

▷ If the automatic headlamp control is activated, the low beams will come on automatically when you switch on the fog lamps.◀

Instrument lighting

You can control the lighting intensity by using the knurled wheel.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Interior lamps

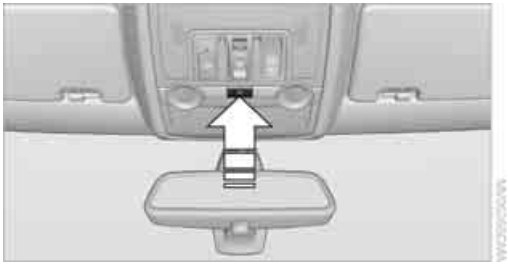
The interior lamps, footwell lamps, door entry lighting and courtesy lamps* are controlled automatically.

With the courtesy lamps, LED lights are located in the door handles to illuminate the exterior area before the doors.

CarManuals2.com

▷ To protect the battery, all lamps in the vehicle are switched off approx. 15 minutes after radio readiness is switched off, refer to Start/Stop button on page 56.◀

Switching interior lamps on and off manually



Press the button.

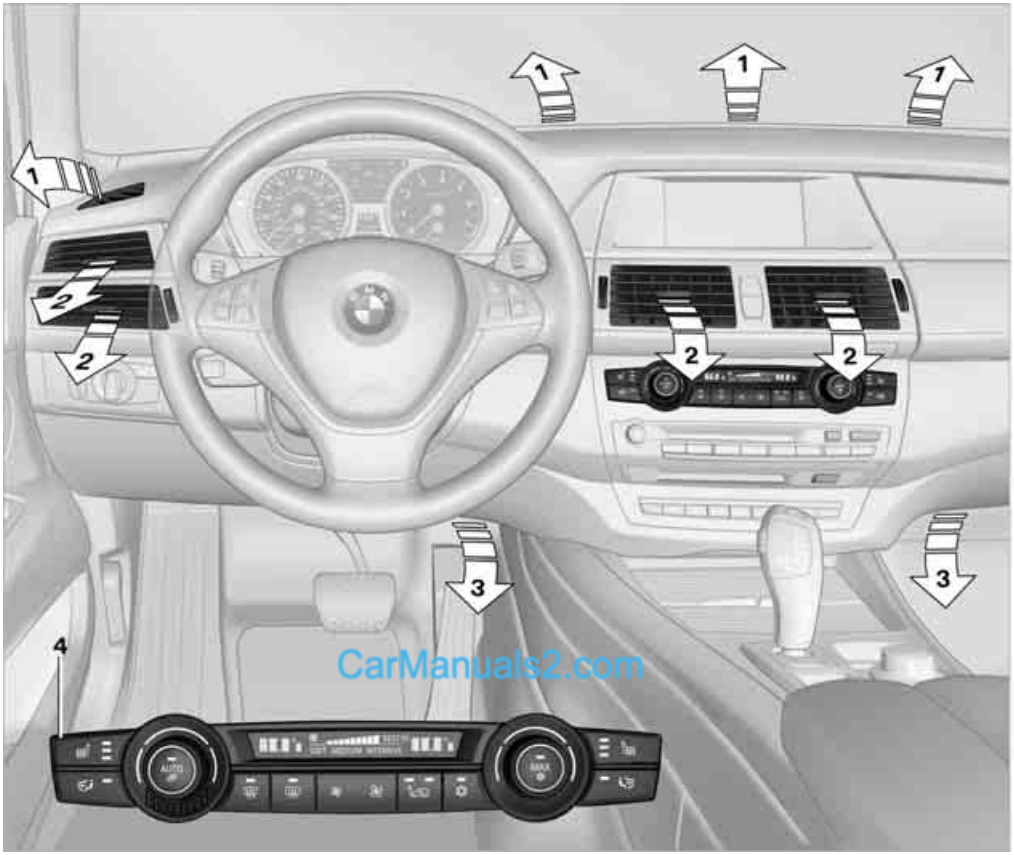
If you want the interior lamps to remain off continuously, maintain pressure on the button for approx. 3 seconds.

Reading lamps

Reading lamps are provided in the front and rear* adjacent to the interior lamps. Press the button to switch the lamps on and off.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Climate



1 Air toward the windshield and side windows

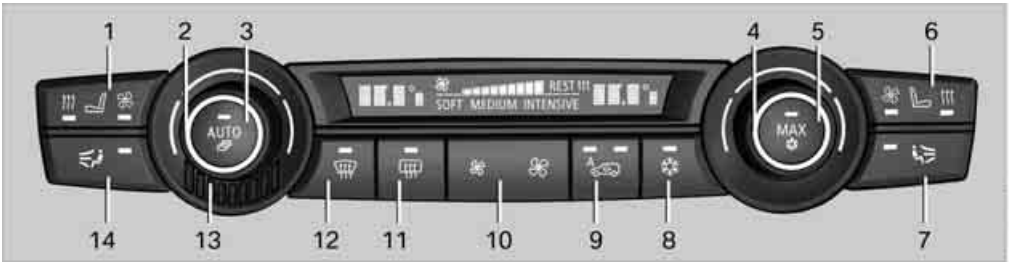
2 Air for the upper body region, refer to Front ventilation on page 105

3 Air to footwell

4 Automatic climate control

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Automatic climate control



1 Seat heating* and ventilation*, driver's side 47

2 Temperature, left side of passenger compartment

3 AUTO program

4 Temperature, right side of passenger compartment

5 Maximum cooling

6 Seat heating* and ventilation*, front passenger side 47

7 Manual air distribution, front passenger side

8 Switching cooling function on and off manually

9 AUC Automatic recirculated-air control/ recirculated-air mode

10 Manual air volume and residual heat utilization

11 Rear window defroster

12 Defrosting windows and removing condensation

13 Air grill for interior temperature sensor – please keep clear and unobstructed

14 Manual air distribution, driver's side

The current setting for air distribution is displayed on the Control Display.

A congenial climate

The AUTO program offers the optimum air distribution and air volume for virtually all conditions, refer to AUTO program below. Now you only need to select an interior temperature pleasant to you.

The following sections contain more detailed information on the available setting options.

Most settings are stored for the remote control currently in use, also refer to Personal Profile settings on page 29.

AUTO program

The AUTO program handles the adjustment of air distribution to the windshield and side windows, in the direction of the upper body and in the footwell, as well as the air volume. It also adapts your instructions for the temperature to outside influences throughout the year.

The cooling is switched on automatically with the AUTO program. At the same time, a condensation sensor controls the program in such a way that window condensation is prevented as much as possible.

Intensity of AUTO program

You can adjust the intensity of the AUTO program by repeatedly pressing the AUTO button. The respective current setting is displayed when the button on the display of the automatic climate control is pressed.

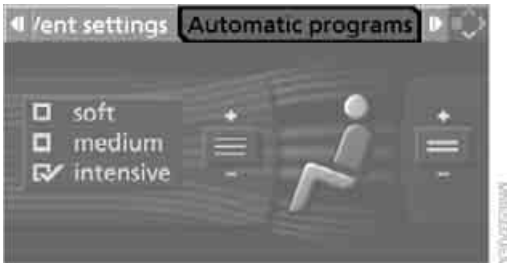
You can also adjust the intensity of the AUTO program via iDrive.

iDrive, for explanation of concept, refer to page 16.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller to the left to open "Climate".
3. Select "Automatic programs" and press the controller.



4. Select the desired intensity and press the controller.

   The marked intensity of the automatic program is switched on.

Temperature

Set the desired temperature individually on the driver's and front passenger side.

The automatic climate control adjusts this temperature as quickly as possible at any time of year, if necessary with the maximum cooling or heating capacity, and then keeps it constant.

When switching between different temperature settings in rapid succession, the automatic climate control does not have sufficient time to adjust the set temperature.◀

Adjusting temperature

The highest cooling output of the automatic climate control is a temperature of 60 °F /16 °C and the highest heating output at 84 °F /28 °C.

For cooling with the highest temperature setting, select an interior temperature of 83 °F /27.5 °C, as at 84 °F /28 °C the automatic climate control operates with the highest heating output.◀

Adjusting temperature in upper body region

1. Open the start menu.
2. Move the controller to the left to open "Climate".
3. Select "Vent settings" and press the controller.
4. Move the controller to select the field.
5. Turn the controller to adjust the temperature.

Defrosting windows and removing condensation

Quickly remove ice and condensation from the windshield and front side windows.

Rear window defroster

The rear window defroster switches off automatically after a while.

Air volume, manual

You can vary the air volume by pressing on the corresponding side. You can reactivate the automatic mode for the air volume with the AUTO button.

Air distribution, manual

You can route the air flow out into the vehicle interior with various programs.

CarManuals2.com

Programs on driver's side:

- Upper body region
- Upper body region and footwell

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

- ▷ Footwell
- ▷ Windows and footwell
- ▷ Individual program

Programs on front passenger side:

- ▷ Upper body region
- ▷ Upper body region and footwell
- ▷ Footwell
- ▷ Individual program

Selecting program

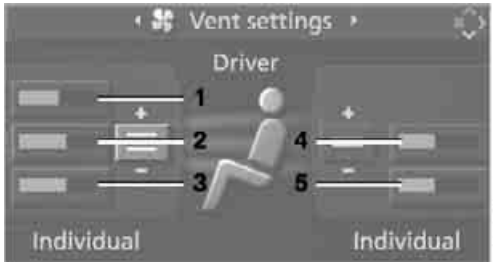
Press the button repeatedly until the desired program is shown on the display of the automatic climate control.

Individually adjusting air distribution

The settings are stored in the individual program.

iDrive, for explanation of concept, refer to page 16.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Move the controller to the left to open "Climate".
3. Select "Vent settings" and press the controller.
   The driver's and front passenger side can be adjusted separately with the fields on the right or left side.
4. Select the driver's or front passenger side if necessary.
   Move the controller to the right or left repeatedly until the driver's or front passenger side is selected.
5. Select the desired field by moving the controller.
6. Turn the controller to adjust the air distribution.



Driver's side:

1 Air toward the windshield and side windows

2 Air for the upper body

3 Air to footwell

Front passenger side:

4 Air for the upper body

5 Air to footwell

Pressing the AUTO button cancels the manual air distribution settings.◀

The automatic mode for the air volume remains effective with manual air distribution.

Switching cooling function on and off

CarManuals2.com

The cooling function cools and dehumidifies the incoming air before also reheating it as required, according to the temperature setting. Depending on the weather, the windshield may fog over briefly when the engine is started.

The cooling function is switched on automatically with the AUTO program. The passenger compartment can only be cooled with the engine running.

Maximum cooling

Maximally cooled air is obtained as quickly as possible from an outside temperature above 32 °F /0 °C and with the engine running.

The automatic climate control changes over to the lowest temperature and switches into the recirculated-air mode. The maximum air quantity only flows out of the vents for the upper body. Therefore, open these vents for maximum cooling.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

AUC Automatic recirculated-air control/recirculated-air mode

You can respond to pollutants or unpleasant odors in the immediate environment by suspending the supply of outside air. The system then recirculates the air currently within the vehicle. During AUC operation, a sensor detects pollutants in the outside air and controls the shut-off automatically.

By pressing the button repeatedly, you can request three operating modes:

- ▷ LED off: outside air flows in continuously.
- ▷ Left LED on, AUC mode: the system detects pollutants in the outside air and shuts off the supply as needed.
- ▷ Right LED on, recirculated-air mode: the supply of outside air is permanently shut off.

⚠ If condensation starts to form on the inside window surfaces during operation in the recirculated-air mode, you should switch it off while also increasing the air volume as required.
The recirculated-air mode should not be used over an extended period of time, as the air quality inside the vehicle deteriorates continuously.◀

Residual heat

The heat stored in the engine is used to heat the passenger compartment, e.g. while stopped at a school to pick up a child.

Switching on residual heat utilization

Pressing the right side switches on the residual heat utilization when the following conditions are met:

- ▷ up to 15 minutes after switching off the engine
- ▷ with the engine at operating temperature
- ▷ with sufficient battery voltage
- ▷ at an outside temperature below 77 °F / 25 °C

REST appears on the display of the automatic climate control when the residual heat utilization is switched on.

From radio readiness the interior temperature, the air volume and the air distribution can be set.

▷ If the conditions for the residual heat utilization are met, no display appears.◀

Switching off residual heat utilization

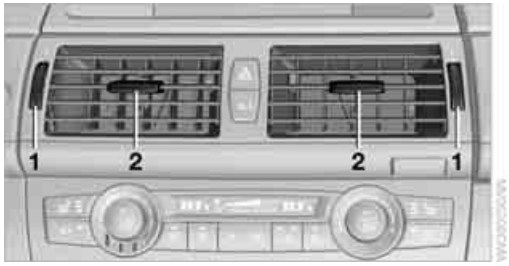
You can select the lowest blower speed by pressing and holding the left side. Pressing again switches off the residual heat utilization. REST disappears from the display of the automatic climate control.

Switching off automatic climate control

You can select the lowest blower speed by pressing and holding the left side. Pressing again switches off the automatic climate control. The air volume, the heater and the cooling function are all switched off.

You can switch on the system again by pressing any button of the automatic climate control.

Front ventilation



1 Knurled wheels to smoothly open and close air vents

2 Levers to change the air vent direction

⚠ Do not drop any foreign objects into the air vents, otherwise these could be catapulted outwards and lead to injuries.◀

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

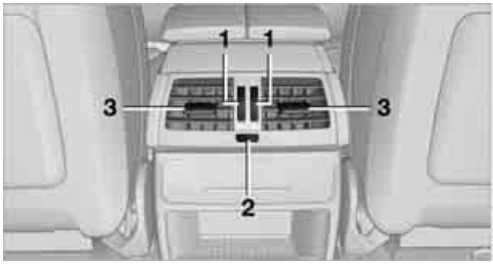
Ventilation for cooling

Adjust the air vents to direct the flow of cool air in your direction, for instance, if the interior has become too warm, etc.

Draft-free ventilation

Set the air vents so that the air flows past you and is not directed straight at you.

Ventilation in rear



1 Knurled wheels to smoothly open and close air vents

2 Knurled wheel for adjusting the temperature in the upper body region:

- ▷ Turn toward blue: colder
- ▷ Turn toward red: warmer

3 Levers to change the air vent direction

Heating and ventilation of 3rd row seats*

The air in the area of the 3rd row seats can be heated or recirculated. Air vents are located in the storage tray area between the seats and in the footwell of the 3rd row seats.

1 Knurled wheel:

- ▷ Activating heating and distributing air in footwell:
  Turn toward front
- ▷ Distributing air in storage compartment area between seats:
  Turn toward rear

2 Button for switching on blower:
LED lights up

▷ The heating is not ready for operation without switching on the blower. After the heating is switched off, the blower can be used to recirculate the air within the vehicle, e.g. at high temperatures. To do this, turn the knurled wheel **1** toward the rear and switch on the blower, button **2**.

CarManuals2.com

Microfilter/activated-charcoal filter

The microfilter removes dust and pollen from the incoming air. The activated-charcoal filter provides additional protection by filtering gaseous pollutants from the outside air. This combined filter is changed during maintenance by your BMW Sports Activity Vehicle Center.
You can select a display of more detailed information on the Control Display, refer to page 71.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Rear automatic climate control*

The control unit of the rear automatic climate control is located in the center console in the rear. The following settings and operating modes can be selected and adjusted separately for the left and right rear seating area:

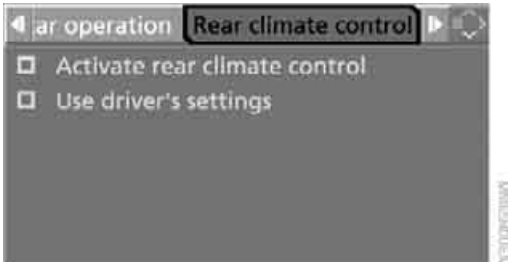
1 Temperature, left rear seating area
2 AUTO program
3 Display
4 Temperature, right rear seating area
5 Seat heating, right rear seat
6 Air volume, manual
7 Seat heating, left rear seat

The current setting for the temperature and the air volume is shown on the display **3**.

Activating rear automatic climate control

iDrive, for explanation of concept, refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller to the left to open "Climate".
3. Select "Rear climate control" and press the controller.



4. Select the desired settings and press the controller.

   The rear automatic climate control is activated and the settings of the automatic climate control on the driver's side can be applied if necessary.

The rear automatic climate control is not ready for operation if the automatic climate control is switched off. When activating the function of the automatic climate control for defrosting the windows and removing condensation, the rear automatic climate control is also not ready for operation.◀

AUTO program

The AUTO program assumes the adjustment of the air distribution toward the upper body and in the footwell, as well as the air volume for you. It also adapts your instructions for the temperature to outside influences throughout the year.

Temperature

Set the desired temperature individually on the left and right side.

The rear automatic climate control adjusts this temperature as quickly as possible at any time of year, if necessary with the maximum cooling or heating capacity, and then keeps it constant.

When switching between different temperature settings in rapid succession, the rear automatic climate control does not have sufficient time to adjust the set temperature.◀

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Air volume, manual

You can vary the air volume by pressing on the corresponding side. You can reactivate the automatic mode for the air volume with the AUTO button.

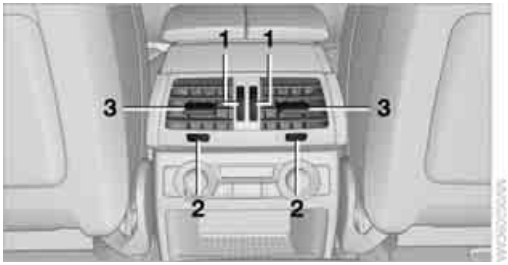
Switching off rear automatic climate control

You can select the lowest blower speed by pressing and holding the left side. Pressing again switches off the rear automatic climate control. The air volume, the heater and the cooling function are all switched off.

▷ The rear automatic climate control can also be switched off with iDrive. To switch on the rear automatic climate control again, the system must first be reactivated, refer to Activating rear automatic climate control.◀

You can switch on the system again by pressing any button of the rear automatic climate control.

Rear ventilation

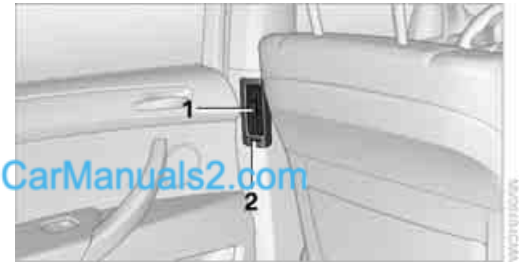


1 Knurled wheels to smoothly open and close air vents

2 Knurled wheels to adjust temperature in upper body region; can be adjusted separately for left and right:

- ▷ Turn toward blue: colder
- ▷ Turn toward red: warmer

3 Levers to change the air vent direction



CarManuals2.com

1 Lever to change the air vent direction

2 Knurled wheel to smoothly open and close air vents

For information on the ventilation of the 3rd row seats, refer to page 106.

Parked car ventilation*

The concept

The parked car ventilation blows air into the passenger compartment to lower interior temperatures.

It is ready to use in the parked-car mode at any outside temperature.

You can set two different times for the system to start. The parked car ventilation can also be switched on and off directly. It remains switched on for 30 minutes.

Since the system uses a substantial amount of electrical current, you should refrain from activating it twice in succession without allowing the battery to be recharged in normal operation between use.

The air emerges through the upper body region air vents in the instrument panel. Therefore, please open the air vents.

The parked car ventilation is operated via iDrive.

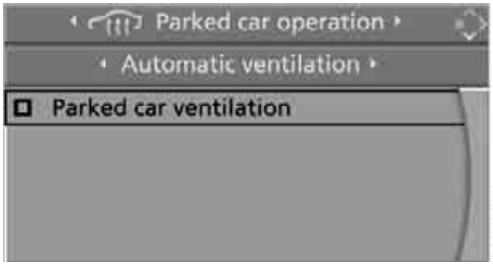
Switching on and off directly

iDrive, for explanation of concept, refer to page 16.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Move the controller to the left to open "Climate".

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

3. Select "Parked car operation" and press the controller.
4. Select "Automatic ventilation" and press the controller.
5. Select "Parked car ventilation" and press the controller.



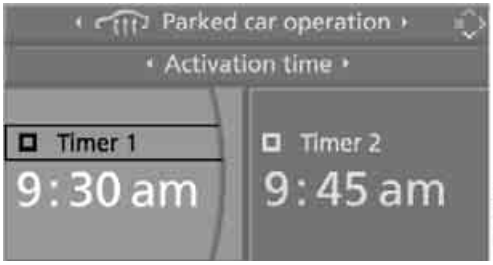
The parked car ventilation is switched on.

The symbol on the display of the automatic climate control flashes.

Preselecting activation times

iDrive, for explanation of concept, refer to page 16.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Move the controller to the left to open "Climate".
3. Select "Parked car operation" and press the controller.
4. Select "Activation time" and press the controller.
5. Move the controller to the left or right to select "Timer 1" or "Timer 2".



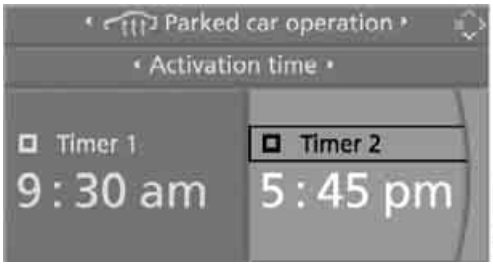
6. Select the time and press the controller.

The first time setting is highlighted.

7. Turn the controller to make the adjustment.
8. Press the controller to apply the setting. The next setting is highlighted.
9. Make the remaining adjustments. After the last adjustment, the time is stored.

Activating activation time

Move the controller to the left or right to select "Timer 1" or "Timer 2" and press the controller.



The activation time is activated.

The symbol on the display of the automatic climate control lights up.

The symbol on the display of the automatic climate control flashes when the parked car ventilation has switched on.

The parked car ventilation is only available for activation within the next 24 hours. Then it must be activated again.◀

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Practical interior accessories

Integrated universal remote control*

The concept

The integrated universal remote control can replace as many as three hand-held transmitters for various remote-controlled accessories, such as door openers and house alarm systems. The integrated universal remote control registers and stores signals from the original hand-held transmitters.

The signal of an original hand-held transmitter can be programmed on one of the three memory buttons **1**. Then with the ignition switched on, this programmed memory button **1** can be used to operate the respective feature. The LED **2** flashes to confirm transmission of the signal.

Should you sell your vehicle one day, be sure to delete the stored programs beforehand for your safety, refer to page 111.

To prevent possible damage or injury, before programming or using the integrated universal remote control, always inspect the immediate area to make certain that no people, animals or objects are within the travel range of the device. Also, comply with the safety precautions of the original hand-held transmitter.◀

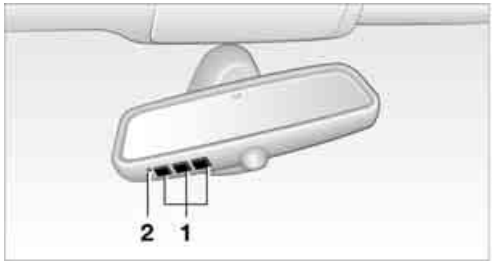
Checking compatibility

If you see this symbol on the packaging or in the manual supplied with the original hand-held transmitter, it is safe to assume that it is compatible with the integrated universal remote control.

Should you have additional questions, please contact your BMW Sports Activity Vehicle Center or call: 1-800-355-3515. Information is also provided on the Internet at: www.bmwusa.com or www.homelink.com.

HomeLink is a registered trademark of Johnson Controls, Inc.◀

Programming



1 Memory buttons

2 LED

Fixed-code hand-held transmitters

1. Switch on ignition, refer to page 56.
2. When starting operation for the first time: Press both outer memory buttons **1** for approx. 20 seconds until the LED **2** flashes. All stored programs are deleted.
3. Hold the original hand-held transmitter at a distance of approx. 2 in/5 cm to 8 in/20 cm from the memory buttons **1**.

   The required distance between the hand-held transmitter and the memory buttons **1** depends on the relevant system of the original hand-held transmitter used.◀
4. Simultaneously press the transmit button on the original hand-held transmitter and the desired memory button **1** on the integrated universal remote control. The LED **2** flashes slowly at first. As soon as the LED **2** flashes rapidly, release both buttons. If the LED **2** does not flash rapidly after approx. 15 seconds, alter the distance.
5. To program other original hand-held transmitters, repeat steps 3 and 4.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

The corresponding memory button **1** is now programmed with the signal of the original hand-held transmitter.

You can operate the device when the engine is running or when the ignition is switched on.

If the device cannot be used after repeated programming, check whether the original hand-held transmitter uses an alternating-code system. To do so, either read the instructions for the original hand-held transmitter or hold down the programmed memory button **1** of the integrated universal remote control. If the LED **2** on the integrated universal remote control flashes rapidly for a short time and then remains lit for approx. 2 seconds, this indicates that the original hand-held transmitter uses an alternating-code system. In the case of an alternating-code system, program the memory buttons **1** as described at Alternating-code hand-held transmitters.◀

Alternating-code hand-held transmitters

To program the integrated universal remote control, consult the operating instructions for the equipment to be set. You will find information there on the possibilities for synchronization.
When programming hand-held transmitters that employ an alternating code, please observe the following supplementary instructions:

Programming will be easier with the aid of a second person.◀

1. Park your vehicle within the range of the remote-controlled device.
2. Program the integrated universal remote control as described above in the section Fixed-code hand-held transmitters.
3. Locate the button on the receiver of the device to be set, e.g. on the drive unit.
4. Press the button on the receiver of the device to be set. After step 4, you have approx. 30 seconds for step 5.
5. Press the programmed memory button **1** of the integrated universal remote control three times.

CarManuals2.com

The corresponding memory button **1** is now programmed with the signal of the original hand-held transmitter.

Should you have questions, please contact your BMW Sports Activity Vehicle Center.◀

Deleting stored programs

Press both outer memory buttons **1** for approx. 20 seconds until the LED **2** flashes:
All stored programs are deleted.

Individual programs cannot be deleted.

Digital compass*

1 Adjustment button

2 Display

The display indicates the cardinal or intercardinal direction in which you are currently driving.

Operating principle

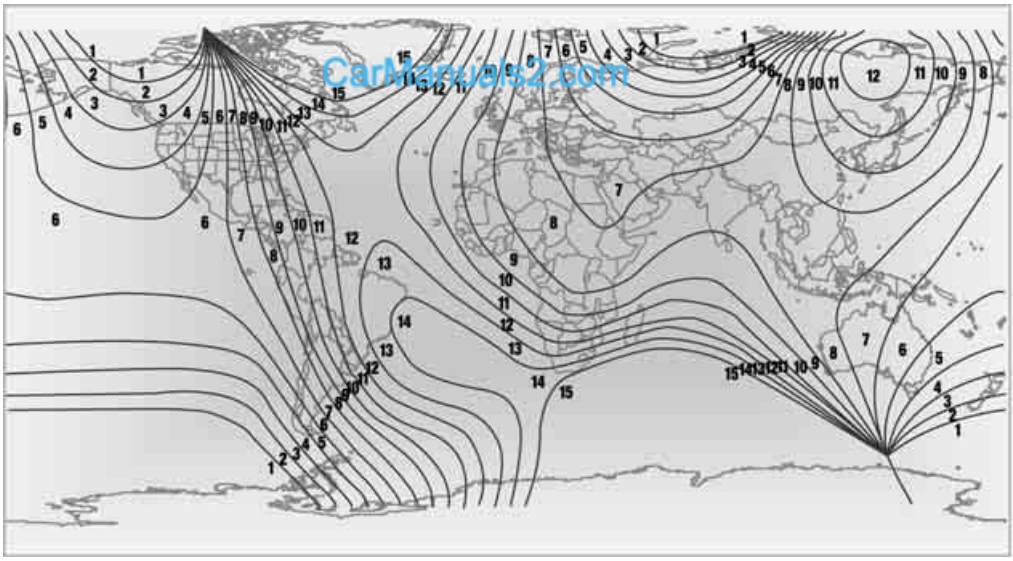
You can run various functions by pressing the adjustment button with a pointed object, e.g. a ball-point pen etc. The following setting options are displayed consecutively, depending on how long the adjustment button is pressed:

- Press briefly: switch display on/off
- 3 to 6 seconds: set compass zone
- 6 to 9 seconds: calibrate compass
- 9 to 12 seconds: set left/right-hand drive vehicle
- 12 to 15 seconds: set language

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Setting compass zones

Set the respectively applicable compass zone in your vehicle so that the compass functions properly, refer to the map of the world with compass zones below.



To set the compass zones, press the adjustment button for approx. 3-4 seconds. The display indicates the number of the currently set compass zone.

To change the zone setting, briefly press the adjusting button repeatedly until the number of the compass zone that applies to your current position is displayed.

The compass will be operational again after approx. 10 seconds.

Calibrating digital compass

In the following situations, the digital compass must be calibrated:

- ▷ The wrong cardinal direction appears on the display.
- ▷ The cardinal direction displayed does not change despite a change in the direction of travel.
- ▷ Not all cardinal directions are displayed.

Procedure

1. Make sure that there are no large metal objects or overhead power lines in the vicinity of your vehicle and that you have enough space to drive in a circle.
2. Input the currently applicable compass zone.
3. Press the adjustment button for approx. 6-7 seconds to display C. Then drive in a complete circle at least once at a maximum speed of 4 mph/7 km/h.
   If the calibration is successful, the display C is replaced with the points of the compass.

Setting right/left-hand drive vehicle

Your digital compass is already set to right or left-hand drive vehicle to match your vehicle at the factory.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Setting language

You can set the language of the display.

Press the adjustment button for approx. 12-13 seconds. Briefly press the adjustment button again to switch between English "E" and German "O".

The setting is automatically stored after approx. 10 seconds.

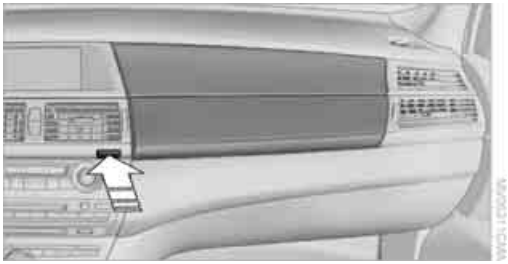
Roller sun blinds for rear side windows*

Pull the loop of the roller sun blind and hook onto bracket.

With roller sun blinds attached, do not open the windows during travel. The blinds may otherwise be damaged by the wind.◀

Glove compartment

Opening



Press the button. The covers open upward and downward and the lighting in the glove compartment switches on.

To prevent injury in the event of an accident while the vehicle is being driven, close the glove compartment immediately after use.◀

Closing

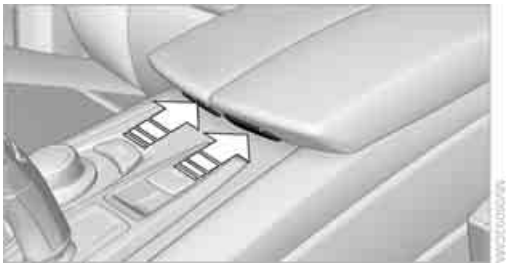
Press one of the two covers closed; both covers are closed.

CarManuals2.com

Center armrest

A storage compartment is located under the armrest between the front seats and, depending on the vehicle's equipment, also a cover for the mobile phone bracket or snap-in adapter. Also refer to page 188.

Opening cover



Press the button; the respective cover folds upward.

Connection for external audio device

You can connect an external audio device, e.g. a CD or an MP3 player, and play the sound via the vehicle loudspeakers, refer to page 171.

Rechargeable flashlight*

The flashlight can remain plugged in continuously. Pull the flashlight out of the socket when needed.

To avoid possibly damaging the lamp, always ensure that it is switched off before inserting it in the socket.◀

Storage compartments

There are other storage compartments in the doors as well as in the front and rear center console*.
Storage nets* are located on the backrests of the front seats.

Do not stow hard or sharp-edged objects in the storage nets or the net, otherwise there is an increased risk of injury in an accident.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Clothes hooks

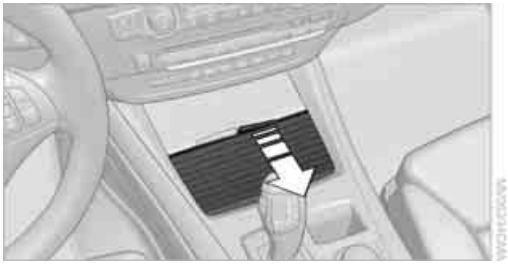
Clothes hooks are located near the grab handles in the rear.

When hanging clothing on the hooks, ensure that it will not obstruct the driver's vision. Do not hang heavy objects on the hooks. If you do so, they could cause personal injury to occupants during braking or evasive maneuvers.◀

Cup holders

Do not place containers made of glass in the cup holders. This would lead to an increased risk of injury in the event of an accident. Do not force unsuitable containers into the cup holders, as otherwise damage can result.◀

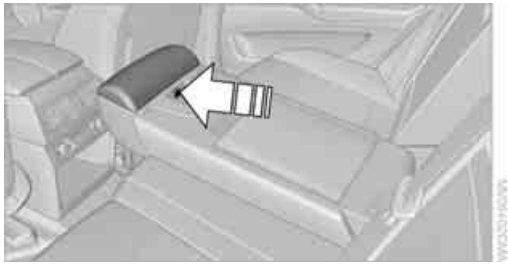
Front



Slide back the cover.

Rear

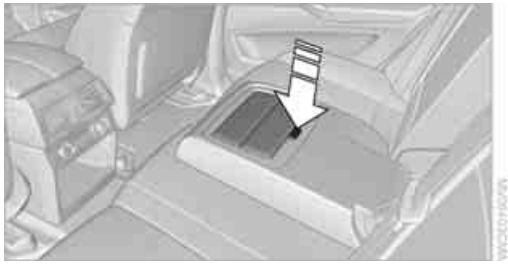
Release the center armrest with the button in the lower section of the opening under the head restraint and then fold down the armrest.



Press the button; the cover folds forward.

On vehicles with 3rd row seats*

Fold down the center armrest.



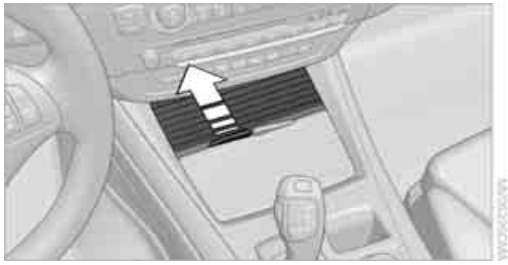
Press the button; the cup holders are opened.

3rd row seats*

The cup holders are located in the center console between the seats.

Ashtray

Front



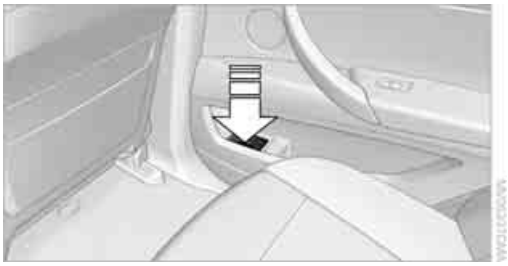
To open the cover, slide it forward.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Press the button. The ashtray insert raises slightly and can be removed.

Rear



To empty, press open the cover completely. The ashtray rises and can be removed.

Lighter

Front

Press in the lighter with the engine running or the ignition switched on.

The lighter can be removed as soon as it pops back out.

⚠ Hold or touch the hot cigarette lighter by the knob only. Holding or touching it in other areas could result in burns.

Always take along the remote control when you leave the vehicle, otherwise children could, for example, use the lighter and burn themselves. ◀

Rear

Refer to Cigarette lighter, front.

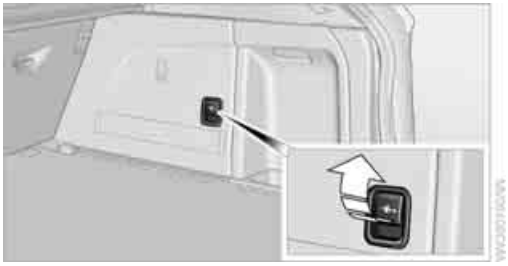
Connecting electrical devices

Sockets

With the engine running or the ignition switched on, the cigarette lighter socket can be used as a power outlet for hand flashlights, car vacuum cleaners, etc., with power ratings of up to approx. 200 W at 12 V. Avoid damaging the socket due to inserting plugs of different shapes or sizes. The same is true for all power outlets in the vehicle.

CarManuals2.com

In cargo bay



Access to socket:
Fold open the cover.

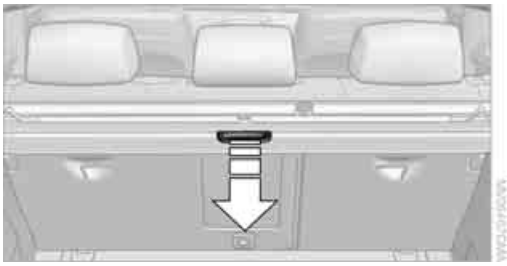
In storage compartment under center armrest

Access to socket*:
Pull off the cover.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Cargo bay

Roll-up cover

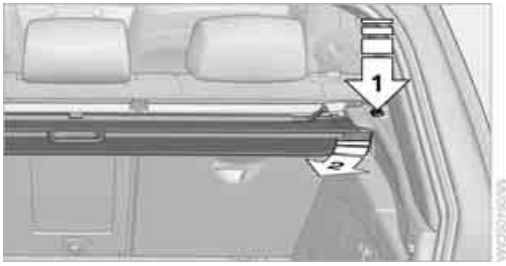


Pull out the roll-up cover and hook it into the brackets.

Do not place heavy or hard objects on the roll-up cover. If you do so, they may already pose a danger to vehicle occupants during braking or evasive maneuvers.
Do not allow the roll-up cover to snap back, otherwise it can be damaged.◀

Removing

1. Unlock the case with the button, arrow **1**.



2. Swing the case somewhat to the left, arrow **2**, and remove.

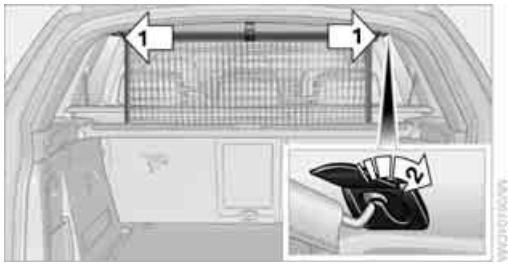
Installing

When installing, proceed in the opposite order of removal.

CarManuals2.com

1. Lay on the case on the left-hand side and push it forward, arrow **1**.
2. Swing the case toward the inside, refer to arrow **2**.
3. Push the case forward at the ends until it engages in the two side brackets.
4. Check whether the case is properly locked in place by pulling it with a sudden movement.

Separation net*



Hooking in separation net

Pull the separation net out of the case by the loop. Grasp the rod on both sides and insert it in the brackets, arrow **1**. This is best carried out from the rear seat.

Letting down separation net

When you no longer require the separation net, grasp the rod on both sides and remove it from the brackets, arrow **2**. Then slowly allow the separation net to glide into the case.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Do not allow the separation net to snap back, otherwise there is a risk of injury and the separation net may be damaged.◀

Expanding cargo bay

The rear seat backrest is divided. You can fold down both sides separately in order to expand the cargo bay.

Reach into the recess and pull toward the front.

When you fold back the backrest, be sure that the catch engages securely. The red warning indicator disappears in the recess when the catch is engaged. If it is not properly engaged, transported cargo could enter the passenger compartment during braking or evasive maneuvers and endanger the vehicle occupants.◀

CarManuals2.com

To ensure that the safety systems continue to provide optimized protection, please observe the safety belt information on page 40.◀

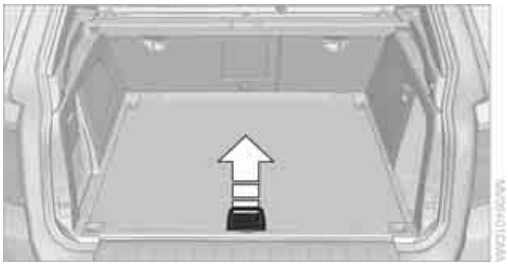
Storage compartments in cargo bay

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the following storage compartments are provided in the cargo bay.

- ▷ Storage compartments behind the removable side panels in the cargo bay on the right and left, and under the floor panel flap.
- ▷ Storage tray* under the floor panel flap, capacity approx. 21 US gal/80 liters.
- ▷ Retaining straps* on the left and right side panel for securing small objects.
- ▷ Hooks*, e.g. for hanging up shopping bags or carrier bags on the left and right in the cargo bay.
- ▷ Net* on the left side panel of the cargo bay for smaller objects.
- ▷ Lashing rail with lashing eyes*. You can secure heavy-duty cargo straps on the lashing eyes.
  They can be removed at the notches in the rails. To move the lashing eyes, press the button.

  Read and comply with the information enclosed with the heavy-duty cargo straps.◀

Floor panel flap



To access the onboard toolkit etc.

To open, swing up the flap by the handle, refer to arrow.

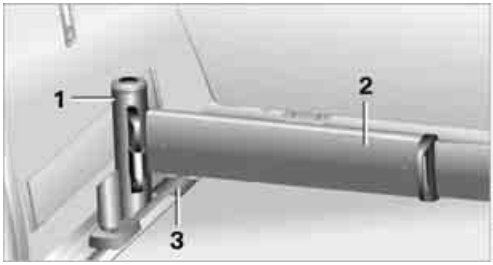
Depending on the model, the floor panel flap can be locked*.

Adaptive fixing system*

The adaptive fixing system is used to divide up the cargo bay. It consists of two brackets with a telescopic rail and retaining straps. These are guided into the two rails on the cargo bay floor.

Before using the adaptive fixing system, fold up and engage the backrest of the 2nd or 3rd* row seats and hook in the partition net*, as otherwise the cargo can be thrown around in the vehicle interior in an accident.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG



1 Brackets

2 Telescopic rail

3 Notch in the cargo bay rail

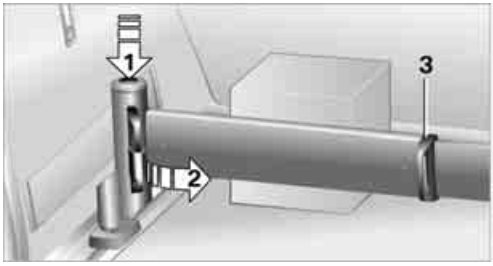
Mounting brackets

The two brackets are connected with a telescopic rail.

1. Mount the bracket in the respective notch of the rail on the cargo bay floor.
2. Press down the bracket to push it into the desired position.
3. Check the firm seating of the brackets. They must be clearly heard to engage.

Dividing up cargo bay

CarManuals2.com



You can position the cargo as follows:

▷ between the rear backrest and the telescopic rail

▷ between the telescopic rail and the retaining strap

Positioning cargo between telescopic rail and retaining strap:

1. Lay the cargo on the telescopic rail. Press the button, arrow **1**, and pull the retaining strap around the cargo, arrow **2**.
2. Hook the retaining strap in the mounts **3** on the telescopic rail.
3. Press the button of the bracket, arrow **1**. The retaining strap is tensioned.

You can also hook both retaining straps into each other.◀

Removing brackets

Press down the bracket and slide it up to the notches of the rails. Then remove the brackets.

Ski bag*

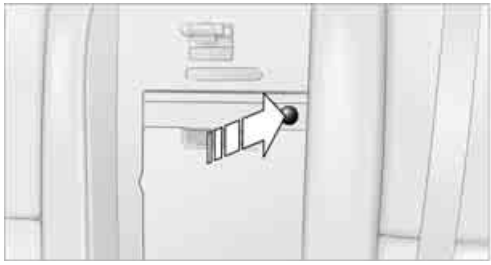
Designed for safe, clean transport of up to 4 pairs of standard skis or up to 2 snowboards.

With the ski bag you can stow skis with a length of up to 6.9 ft/2.10 m. When skis of 6.9 ft/2.10 m in length are loaded, the ski bag will tend to contract, reducing its overall capacity.

Before loading the ski bag, fold in the display screen of the DVD system in the rear*, as otherwise the display screen could be damaged.◀

Loading

1. Fold down the center armrest, press the button and open the cover.



2. Press the button again; the cover in the cargo bay opens. If you press the button firmly the first time, this cover also opens.
3. Extend the ski bag between the front seats and fill it. The zipper facilitates access to the stowed items and drying of the ski bag.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

4. Insert the latch plate of the ski bag retaining strap into the center safety belt buckle that is marked CENTER.

Only stow clean skis in the ski bag. Wrap sharp edges to prevent damage.

Securing cargo

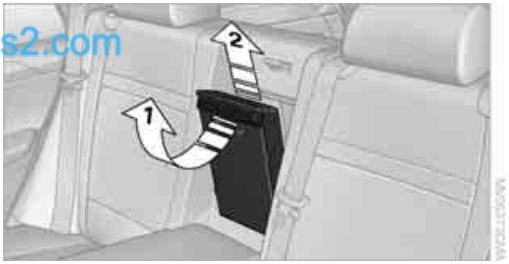
After loading, secure the ski bag and its contents. Tighten the retaining strap on the tensioning buckle for this purpose.

Secure the ski bag in this way. If you fail to do so, it could endanger occupants during braking or evasive maneuvers.◀

To store the ski bag, perform the above steps in reverse order.

Removing ski bag

The ski bag can be completely removed, e.g. for faster drying or to allow you to put it to other uses.



1. Pull the handle toward the front, arrow **1**.
2. Take out the ski bag upward, arrow **2**.
3. Close the cover in the cargo bay.

Details on various inserts are available from your BMW Sports Activity Vehicle Center.◀

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

Driving tips

This section is designed to provide you with extra support by supplying information useful in dealing with specific driving and operating conditions.

Things to remember when driving

Break-in period

Moving parts need breaking-in time to adjust to each other. To ensure that your vehicle continues to provide optimized economy of operation throughout an extended service life, we request that you devote careful attention to the following section.

Engine and differential

Always obey all official speed limits.

Up to 1,200 miles/2,000 km

Drive at changing engine and vehicle speeds, however do not exceed 4,500 rpm or 100 mph/160 km/h.

Avoid full-throttle operation and use of the transmission's kick-down mode during these initial miles.

From 1,200 miles/2,000 km

The engine and vehicle speed can gradually be increased.

Tires

Due to technical factors associated with their manufacture, tires do not achieve their full traction potential until after an initial break-in period. Therefore, drive reservedly during the first 200 miles/300 km.

Brake system

Brakes require an initial break-in period of approx. 300 miles/500 km to achieve optimized contact and wear patterns between brake pads and rotors. Drive in a reserved manner during this break-in period.

Following part replacement

Observe the break-in instructions again if components mentioned above must be replaced after subsequent driving operation.

General driving notes

Closing liftgate/tailgate

Operate the vehicle only when the tailgate and liftgate are completely closed. Otherwise, exhaust fumes could enter into the passenger compartment.◀

However, if special circumstances should make it absolutely necessary to operate the vehicle with the liftgate/tailgate open:

1. Close all windows and the panorama glass sunroof.
2. Increase the air volume of the automatic climate control to a high level, refer to page 103.

Hot exhaust system

As in all vehicles, extremely high temperatures are generated on the exhaust system. Do not remove the heat shields installed adjacent to it, and never apply undercoating to them. When driving, standing at idle and while parking take care to avoid possible contact between the hot exhaust system and any highly flammable materials such as hay, leaves, grass, etc. Such contact could lead to a fire, and with it the risk of serious property damage as well as personal injury. Do not touch hot tailpipes, as otherwise there is a danger of burns.◀

Mobile communications devices in vehicle

BMW discourages the use of mobile communications devices, e.g. mobile phones, inside the vehicle without a direct connection to an outside antenna. Otherwise, the vehicle electronics and mobile communication device can influence one another. In addition, there is no assurance that the radiation which results from transmission will be dissipated from the vehicle interior.◀

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Hydroplaning

When driving on wet or slushy roads, reduce road speed. If you do not, a wedge of water can form between tires and road surface. This phenomenon is referred to as hydroplaning, and is characterized by a partial or complete loss of contact between the tires and the road surface, ultimately undermining your ability to steer and brake the vehicle.◀

The risk of hydroplaning increases as the tread depth of the tires decreases, refer also to Minimum tread depth on page 219.

Driving through water

Do not drive through water on the road if it is deeper than 20 in/50 cm, and then only at walking speed at the most. Otherwise, the vehicle's engine, the electrical systems and the transmission may be damaged.◀

Starting assistant

The starting assistant enables you to start off conveniently on slopes. The parking brake is not required for this purpose.

1. Hold the vehicle with the footbrake.
2. Release the footbrake and immediately drive off quickly.

The starting assistant holds the vehicle for approx. 2 seconds after releasing the footbrake. Depending on the load, the vehicle may also roll back slightly during this time. After releasing the footbrake, immediately start quickly, otherwise the starting assistant no longer holds the vehicle after approx. 2 seconds and it begins to roll back.◀

Braking safely

Your BMW is equipped with ABS as a standard feature. In situations that require it, it is best to brake with full force. Since the vehicle maintains steering responsiveness, you can still avoid possible obstacles with a minimum of steering effort.

CarManuals2.com

Pulsation of the brake pedal, combined with sounds from the hydraulic circuits, indicate that ABS is in its active mode.

Do not drive with your foot resting on the brake pedal. Even light but consistent pedal pressure can lead to high temperatures, brake wear and possibly even brake failure.◀

Driving in wet conditions

When roads are wet or there is heavy rain, briefly exert gentle pressure on the brake pedal every few miles. Monitor traffic conditions to ensure that this maneuver does not endanger other road users. The heat generated in this process helps dry the pads and rotors to ensure that full braking efficiency will then be available when you need it.

Hills

To prevent overheating and the resulting reduced efficiency of the brake system, drive long or steep downhill gradients in the gear in which the least braking is required. Even light but consistent pressure on the brake pedal can lead to high temperatures, brake wear and possibly even brake failure.◀

The braking effect of the engine can be further increased by downshifting in the manual mode of the automatic transmission, if necessary into first gear, refer to page 61. This prevents an excessive strain on the brakes.

Do not drive in idle or with the engine stopped, otherwise there will be no engine braking action or support of the braking force and steering.
Never allow floor mats, carpets or any other objects to protrude into the area of movement of the pedals and impair their operation.◀

Corrosion on brake rotors

When the vehicle is driven only occasionally, during extended periods when the vehicle is not used at all, and in operating conditions where brake applications are less frequent, there is an increased tendency for corrosion to form on rotors, while contaminants accumulate on the brake pads. This occurs because the minimum pressure which must be exerted by the pads during brake applications to clean the rotors is not reached.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Should corrosion form on the brake rotors, the brakes will tend to respond with a pulsating effect that even extended application will fail to cure.

When vehicle is parked

Condensation forms in the automatic climate control system during operation, and then exits under the vehicle. Traces of condensed water under the vehicle are therefore normal.

Before driving into a car wash

Fold in the exterior mirrors, refer to page 48, otherwise they could be damaged due to the width of the vehicle.

General information on the care and maintenance of your BMW is contained in the Caring for your vehicle brochure.

Rear window wiper

The rear window wiper can be damaged in car washes. Take appropriate protective measures; ask the car wash operator if necessary.

With comfort access*

Insert the remote control into the ignition lock. The engine can be switched off in transmission position N. Also refer to page 36.

Loading

To avoid loading the tires beyond their approved carrying capacity, never overload the vehicle. Overloading can lead to overheating and increases the rate at which damage develops inside the tires. The ultimate result can assume the form of a sudden blow-out.◀

Determining loading limit

1. Locate the following statement on your vehicle's placard*:

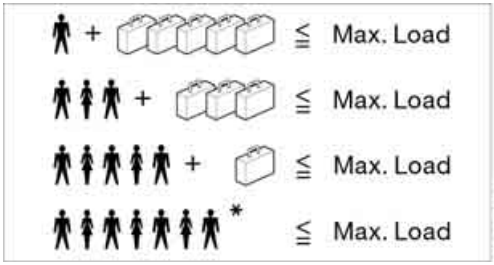
   The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed YYY lbs. or XXX kg. Otherwise, this could damage the vehicle and produce unstable vehicle operating conditions.◀

2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from YYY lbs. or XXX kg.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the YYY amount equals 1,400 lbs. and there will be five 150-lb. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs.:
   1,400 lbs. minus 750 lbs. = 650 lbs.
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, part of the load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult the manual for transporting a trailer to determine how this may reduce the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

CarManuals2.com

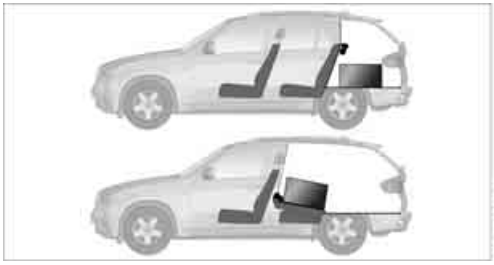
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Load



The permissible load is the total of the weight of occupants and cargo/luggage. The greater the weight of occupants, the less cargo/luggage can be transported.

Stowing cargo

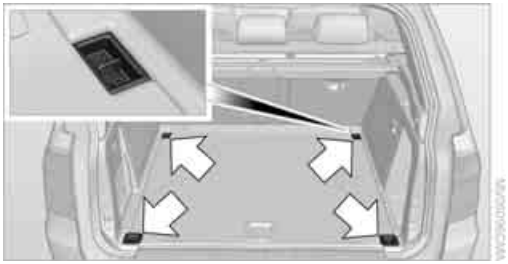


- ▷ Load heavy cargo as far forward and as low as possible, placing it directly behind the backrest.
- ▷ Cover sharp edges and corners.
- ▷ For very heavy cargo when the rear seat is not occupied, secure each safety belt in the opposite buckle.
- ▷ Do not pile objects higher than the top edge of the backrest.
- ▷ Use the separation net to protect the occupants, refer to page 116. Make sure that objects cannot penetrate through the separation net.
  Wrap sharp-edged or pointed objects which could strike the rear window while driving.

CarManuals2.com

Securing cargo

- ▷ Use the luggage net*, retaining straps*, or securing straps to hold down small and lightweight luggage and cargo.



- ▷ For larger and heavier pieces, heavy-duty cargo straps* are available from your BMW Sports Activity Vehicle Center. Four lashing eyes mounted in the cargo bay are used to secure these heavy-duty cargo straps, refer to illustration.
- ▷ Please observe the special instructions supplied with the heavy-duty cargo straps.

⚠ Position and secure the cargo as described above, so that it cannot endanger the car's occupants, for example if sudden braking or evasive maneuvers are necessary.
Use only the lashing eyes to secure heavy-duty cargo straps, refer to illustration, otherwise the cargo straps could become detached or the vehicle could be damaged.
Never exceed either the approved gross vehicle weight or either of the approved axle loads, refer to page 244, as excessive loads can pose a safety hazard, and may also place you in violation of traffic safety laws.
You should never transport unsecured heavy or hard objects in the passenger compartment, as they could fly around and pose a safety hazard to the vehicle's occupants during abrupt braking or evasive maneuvers.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Roof-mounted luggage rack*

A special rack system is available as an option for your BMW. Please comply with the precautions included with the installation instructions.

Loading roof-mounted luggage rack

CarManuals2.com

Because roof racks raise the vehicle's center of gravity when loaded, they have a major effect on its handling and steering response. You should therefore always remember not to exceed the approved roof load capacity, the approved gross vehicle weight or the axle loads when loading the rack.

You can find the specified weights under Weights on page 244.

The load on the roof must be evenly distributed and must not extend outward beyond the limits of the loading surface. Always stow the heaviest pieces on the bottom. Be sure that adequate clearance is maintained for raising the panorama glass sunroof, and that objects do not project into the opening path of the liftgate.

Secure roof-mounted cargo correctly and securely to prevent it from shifting or falling off during the trip.

Drive smoothly. Avoid sudden acceleration and braking maneuvers. Take corners gently.

Driving on poor roads

Your X5 is at home on all roads and surfaces. It combines a 4-wheel drive system with the advantages of a normal passenger car.

Driving on unpaved terrain can cause damage to the vehicle.◀

When you are driving on poor roads, there are a few points which you should strictly observe for your own safety, for that of your passengers, and for the safety of the vehicle:

- ▷ Familiarize yourself with the vehicle before driving off and avoid taking risks at all costs.
- ▷ Adapt your driving speed to the road conditions. The steeper and rougher the road surface is, the lower the speed should be.
- ▷ You can operate your vehicle on uphill and downhill gradients with a maximum slope of 50%. If you want to drive on uphill or downhill gradients of this kind, make sure beforehand that the engine oil and coolant levels are near the MAX mark, refer to page 225.
- ▷ Use the HDC Hill Descent Control when driving down extremely steep grades, refer to page 85. It is possible to start off on grades of up to 33%.
  The permissible body roll is 50%.
- ▷ While driving, watch carefully for obstacles such as rocks or holes. Try to avoid these obstacles whenever possible.
- ▷ Please make sure that the undercarriage does not touch the ground, for example on crests and bumpy roads. The ground clearance of the vehicle is a maximum of approx. 8.0 in/20 cm. Please note that the ground clearance can vary depending on loading and the driving conditions of the vehicle.
- ▷ Only drive through water on roads up to a maximum depth of 20 in/50 cm and only at walking speed, making sure not to stop in the process.
- ▷ After driving through water at low speed, lightly press the brake pedal several times to dry the brakes and to prevent the braking effect from being reduced by wetness.
- ▷ Depending on the condition of the surface, it may be practical to briefly activate DTC, refer to DTC Dynamic Traction Control on page 85.
- ▷ If the drive wheels spin on one side, depress the accelerator pedal sufficiently so that the driving stability control systems can distribute the drive forces to the individual wheels.

Please note the following points after driving on poor roads to maintain the driving safety of your BMW:

- ▷ Clean the coarsest dirt from the body.
- ▷ Clean mud, snow, ice etc. from the wheels and tires and check the tires for damage.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

Navigation

This chapter describes how you can enter destinations and specify your route so that your navigation system guides you reliably to your destination.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part No. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

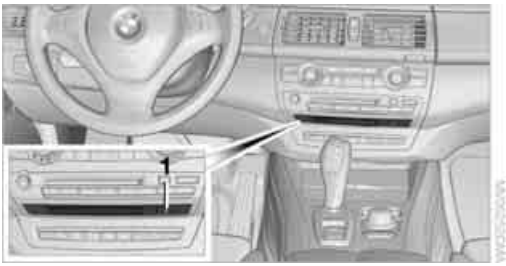
Starting navigation system*

Your navigation system can use satellites to ascertain the precise position of your vehicle and guide you reliably to any destination you enter.

Navigation DVD

The navigation system requires a special navigation DVD. The latest version is available at your BMW Sports Activity Vehicle Center.

Inserting navigation DVD



Use the lower drive for navigation DVD.

1. Insert the navigation DVD with the labeled side up.
   The navigation DVD is automatically pulled in.
2. Allow several seconds for the system to scan the data from the DVD.

Removing navigation DVD

1. Press the ▲ button **1**.
   The DVD emerges slightly from the drive.
2. Remove the DVD.

Display in assistance window

You can display the route or the current position in the assistance window. This display remains visible even if you change to another application.

1. Move the controller to the right to change to the assistance window.

2. Press the controller.
   Other menu items are displayed.
3. Select the desired route view or "Current position".

4. Press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Destination entry

In entering your destination you can select from among the following options:

- ▷ Entering a destination manually, see below
- ▷ Entering destination via voice*, refer to page 134
- ▷ Selecting destination using information, refer to page 137
- ▷ Selecting destination from a list, refer to Destination list, page 138
- ▷ Selecting destination from address book, refer to page 139
- ▷ Selecting home address, refer to page 141

After selecting your destination you can proceed to start the destination guidance, refer to page 143.

You can also store a navigation destination on the programmable memory/direct selection buttons, refer to page 21.

Operating navigation system

⚠ Enter data only when the vehicle is stationary, and always give priority to the applicable traffic regulations in the event of any contradiction between traffic and road conditions and the instructions issued by the navigation system. If you do not observe this precaution, you can endanger the vehicle occupants and other road users.◀

iDrive, for explanation of concept, refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller to the right to open "Navigation".

3. Select "Navigation" and press the controller.

Entering a destination manually

The system's word matching principle makes it easier for you to enter the names of streets or towns/cities, refer to page 142. This allows you to enter different spellings and completes your entry automatically so that stored names can be called up quickly.

1. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Navigation" is selected and press the controller.
   "New destination" is selected.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

2. Press the controller.

3. Select "Enter address" and press the controller.

The system also supports you with the following features:

▷ If you do not enter a street, the system will guide you to the downtown area of a town or city.

▷ You can skip the entry of country and town/city if the current entries should be retained for your new destination.

Selecting country

1. Select "State / Province" or the displayed country and press the controller.

   The list of available countries appears on the display.

CarManuals2.com

2. Select the country of destination and press the controller.

In order to be able to start the destination guidance, at least the town/city of the destination or its zip code must be entered.

Entering destination via town/city name

1. Select "Town / City" or the displayed town/city and press the controller.
2. Select the starting letter and press the controller.
   A list of all towns/cities starting with this letter appears on the Control Display.
3. To delete the letter entered if necessary:

   ▷ Delete individual numbers or letters:
   Move the controller to the right to select ⟵ and press the controller.

   ▷ Delete all numbers or letters:
   Move the controller to the right to select ⟵ and hold down the controller.

4. If necessary, enter more letters.
   The list gradually grows smaller each time you enter a new letter.

   ▷ Enter blank space if necessary:
   Select the _ symbol and press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

5. Change to the third field from the top if necessary. Turn the controller until the town or city name is selected from the list and press the controller.

Entering destination via zip code

1. Select "Town / City" and press the controller.
2. Enter the zip code:
   Select the desired digits and press the controller.

   ▷ Enter a blank space:
   Select the _ symbol and press the controller.
   ▷ Delete individual numbers or letters:
   Move the controller to the right to select ⟵ and press the controller.
   ▷ Delete all numbers or letters:
   Move the controller to the right to select ⟵ and hold down the controller.
3. Select the zip code and press the controller.
   The corresponding destination is displayed.
4. Change into the third field from the top.
   Turn the controller until the destination is selected and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

Entering street, house number and intersection

After the street you can also enter the intersection or the house number.

Entering street and intersection

1. Select "Street" or the displayed street and press the controller.
2. Enter the street.
   The street is entered exactly like the destination.

The intersection is entered in the same way as the street.

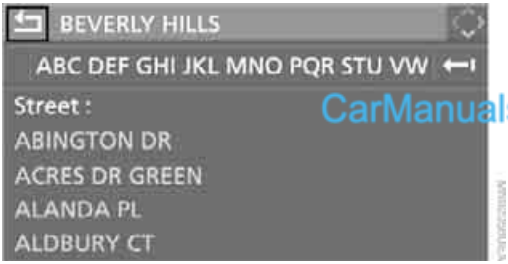
Entering a street without entering a town/city of destination

You can also enter a street without entering a town/city of destination. In this case all streets of the entered country are offered for selection. The related town/city is displayed after the street name.

If a town/city has already been entered, you can undo this entry. This may be practical if the desired street does not exist in the entered destination, because, for example, it belongs to another part of the town/city.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

1. Change to upper field.
   The arrow is selected.



2. Turn the controller to the right until the request for the entry of a street in the country appears and press the controller.

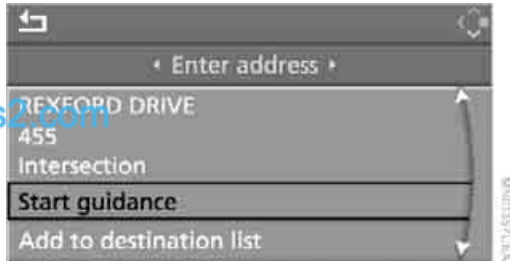
3. Change to the second field from the top and enter the street.

Entering house number

All house numbers stored for the street on the navigation DVD can be entered.

1. Select "House number" and press the controller.
2. Enter the house number:
   Select the desired digits and press the controller.
3. Change into the third field from the top.
   Turn the controller until the house number is selected and press the controller.

Starting destination guidance with manual destination entry



▷ Select "Start guidance" and press the controller.
Destination guidance starts immediately.

▷ If the destination guidance does not need to be started immediately:
Select "Add to destination list" and press the controller.
The destination is stored in the destination list, refer to page 138.

Entering destination via voice*

You can enter a desired destination with the voice command system. When entering the destination, it is possible to change between voice command and iDrive at any time. Reactivate the voice command system for this purpose if necessary.

With ›Options‹ you can have the possible commands read aloud.◀

1. Press the button on the steering wheel.
2. ›Enter address‹

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Selecting country

1. Wait for the system to request the country of destination.
2. Say the name of the country of destination.

Say the name of the country of destination in the language of the voice command system.

Entering destination

The destination can be spelled or entered as an entire word.

Spelling destination

To enter the destination, spell it using the orthography of the country of destination.
Say the letters smoothly and at normal volume, avoiding excessive emphasis and pauses.

1. Spell town/city name:
   Say at least the first three letters of the destination. The more letters you say, the more exactly the system recognizes the town/city.

   The system can suggest up to 20 destinations that match your entries. Up to 6 entries are displayed at once on the Control Display.

A destination is suggested by the system.

2. Select city/town:
   - ▷ Choose selected city/town: ›Yes‹
   - ▷ Select other city/town: ›No‹
   - ▷ Select entry, e.g. ›Entry 3‹
   - ▷ Display additional entries of the list: ›Next page‹
   - ▷ Spell the city/town again: ›Repeat‹

The town/city can also be selected from the list via iDrive:
Turn the controller until the destination is selected and press the controller.

Entering the destination as an entire word*

Destinations and streets in the same language area as the language of the voice command system can be spoken as an entire word.

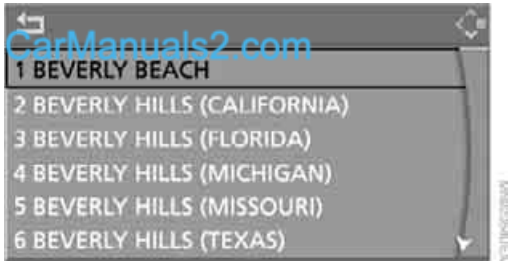
Example: To enter a destination located in the US as an entire word, the language of the system must be English.

The condition for this is the use of a suitable navigation DVD.

Speak smoothly and at normal volume, avoiding excessive emphasis and pauses.

1. Wait for the system to request the destination.
2. Say the name of the destination.

   The system can suggest up to 6 destinations that match your entries.



CarManuals2.com

A destination is suggested by the system.

3. Select city/town:
   - ▷ Choose selected city/town: ›Yes‹
   - ▷ Select other city/town: ›No‹
   - ▷ Select entry, e.g. ›Entry 3‹
   - ▷ Enter city/town again: ›Repeat‹
   - ▷ Enter destination by spelling it: ›Spell‹

The town/city can also be selected from the list via iDrive:
Turn the controller until the destination is selected and press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

▷ Destinations that sound the same which cannot be differentiated by the system are summarized in a separate list and shown as a destination followed by three dots.
Select this entry with ›Yes‹ if necessary. Then select the desired city/town in this list.◀

CarManuals2.com

Entering street and house number

The street is entered in the same way as the destination.

To enter the house number:

1. ›House number‹
2. Say the house number.

Up to 4-digit house numbers can be entered. Say the house number as individual numbers.

Starting destination guidance

›Start guidance‹

Destination guidance starts immediately.

Saving destination

The destination is added to the destination list or can be stored in the address book.

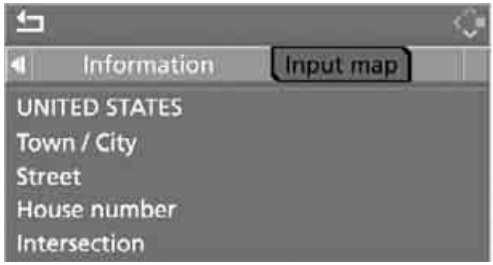
›Add to destination‹ or
›Add to address book‹

Selecting destination via map

If you only know the location of the town/city or street of the destination, then you can enter the destination by using a map. You can use the cursor to select the destination on the map and then apply it in the destination guidance.

1. Select "Navigation" and press the controller.
   "New destination" is selected.
2. Press the controller.

3. Select "Input map" and press the controller.



A section of a map is displayed on the Control Display:

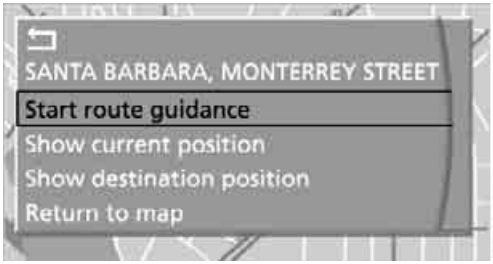
- ▷ During destination guidance, around the current destination
- ▷ With the destination guidance deactivated, around the last destination entered

4. Select destination with cursor.
   - ▷ Changing scale: turn the controller.
   - ▷ Moving map: move the controller in the corresponding direction.
     The controller can be moved to the left, right, forward, backward and also diagonally.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

5. To apply or store the destination in the destination guidance, press the controller.
The selected destination and other menu items are displayed.
6. Select the desired menu item:
   - ▷ "Start route guidance" starts destination guidance.
   - ▷ "Show current position" places the current position in the center of the map.
   - ▷ "Show destination position" places the current destination in the center of the map.
   - ▷ "Return to map" changes back to the "Input map".
   - ▷ Exit the menu.

CarManuals2.com



7. Press the controller.

The map for the destination entry can also be displayed in the map display:
Select the symbol and press the controller.

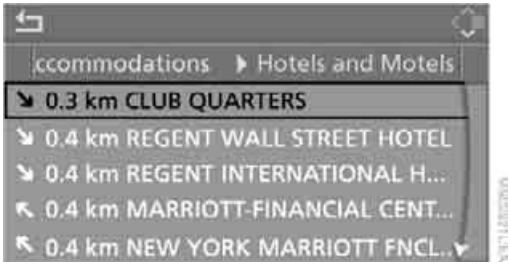
Selecting destination using information

You can obtain a display of selected destinations, e.g. hotels, sights or hospitals, and apply them in the destination guidance.

1. Select "Information" and press the controller.

2. Select location:
   - ▷ "On destination"
   - ▷ "On location"
   - ▷ "On a new destination"

3. Press the controller.
4. Make your selection, e.g. "Hotels and restaurants", and press the controller.
These destinations are displayed on the Control Display.



Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

5. Select a destination and press the controller.
6. Select a menu item:
   - ▷ To apply the address in the destination list and start the destination guidance: Select "Select as destination" and press the controller.
   - ▷ To establish a telephone connection: Select "Call" and press the controller.

To exit the menu:
Select the arrow and press the controller.

Destination list

The last 20 entered destinations are shown in the destination list. You can display these destinations and apply them in the destination guidance.
For example, to plan a longer route, you can store all destinations you want to drive to in advance in the destination list, refer to Entering a destination manually on page 131.

Select "Navigation" and press the controller.

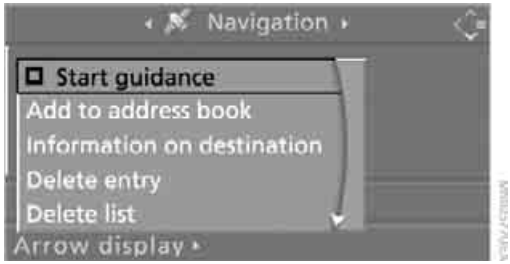
The last destination entered is the first item in the destination list.

This symbol indicates the current destination during destination guide.

To display additional destinations from the destination list:
Turn the controller.

Applying destination in destination guidance

1. Select the desired destination and press the controller.
2. Select "Start guidance" and press the controller.



Editing destination list

1. Select the desired destination in the destination list and press the controller.
2. The selected destination can be edited:
   - ▷ Store entry:
     Select "Add to address book".
   - ▷ Display information on destination:
     Select "Information on destination".
   - ▷ Delete entry:
     Select "Delete entry".
   - ▷ Delete all entries:
     Select "Delete list". The destination guidance is switched off.
   - ▷ Change entry:
     Select "Edit". For operation, refer to Entering destination via town/city name, page 132.
3. Press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

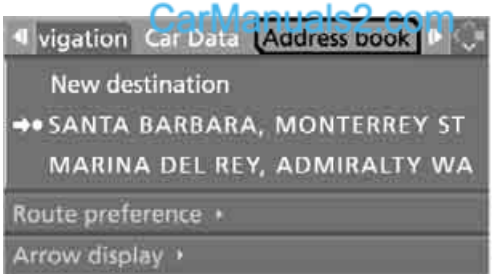
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Address book

Opening address book

iDrive, for explanation of concept, refer to page 16.

CarManuals2.com

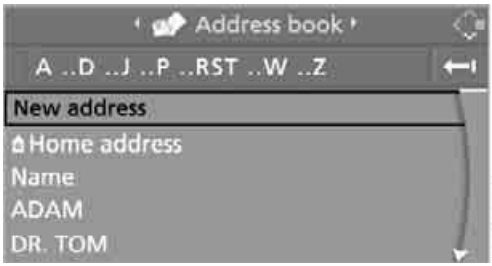


Select "Address book" and press the controller.

Storing destinations in address book

You can store approx. 100 destinations in the address book.

1. Select "Address book" and press the controller.
2. Select "New address" and press the controller.



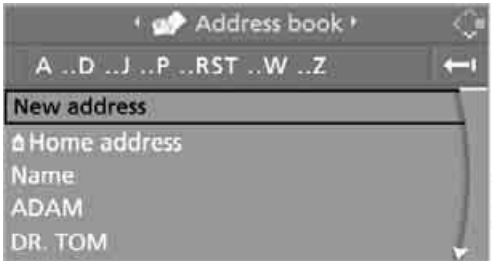
3. Select "Enter address" and press the controller.
4. Enter name and address.
5. Select "Store in address book" and press the controller.
   The entry is stored in the address book.

You can also store a destination from the destination list into the address book, refer to page 138.

Storing current position*

The current position can be applied in the address book.

1. Select "Address book" and press the controller.
2. Change into the third field from the top. Turn the controller until "New address" is selected and press the controller.

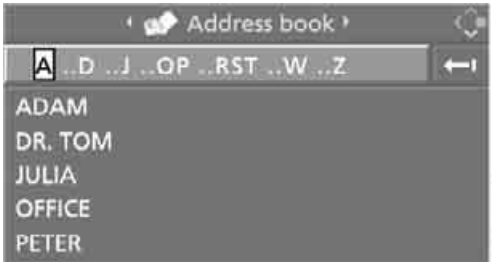


3. Select "Use current location as address" and press the controller.
   The name given can be changed. For operation, refer to Entering a destination manually, page 131.
4. Select "Store in address book" and press the controller.

You can also apply your current position in the address book if you have left the sector covered by the navigation DVD. In this case, you must enter a name.

Selecting destinations from address book

1. Select "Address book" and press the controller.
   The stored entries appear on the Control Display.



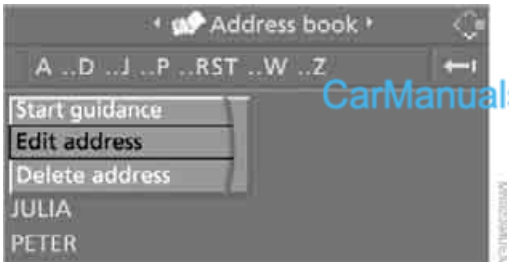
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

2. Select the entry and press the controller.

To start the destination guidance:
Select "Start guidance" and press the controller.

Changing destinations from address book

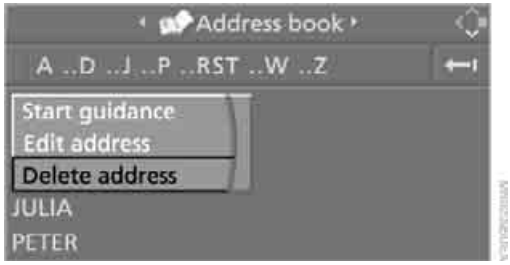
1. Select "Address book" and press the controller.
2. Select the entry and press the controller.
3. Select "Edit address" and press the controller.



4. Change entry.
   For operation, refer to Entering a destination manually, page 131.
5. Select "Store in address book" and press the controller.

Deleting individual destinations from address book

1. Select "Address book" and press the controller.
2. Select the entry and press the controller.
3. Select "Delete address" and press the controller.



Deleting all destinations from address book

1. Open the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Vehicle and tires" and press the controller.
5. Select "Delete data" and press the controller.

6. Select "Delete address book" and press the controller.
7. Select "Yes" and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

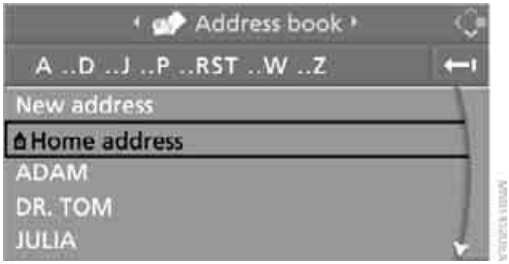
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Home address

You can store your current position or the current destination as the home address in the address book. This entry occupies the second position in the address book.

Storing home address

1. Select "Address book" and press the controller.
2. Change into the third field from the top. Turn the controller until "Home address" is selected and press the controller.



3. Select "Use current location as address", or "Save current destination" during the destination guidance, and press the controller.
4. With Professional navigation system: Select "Store in address book" and press the controller.

Applying home address as destination

1. Select "Home address" and press the controller.
2. Select "Start guidance" and press the controller.

Changing home address

1. Select "Home address" and press the controller.
2. Select "Edit address" and press the controller. For operation, refer to Entering a destination manually, page 131.

CarManuals2.com

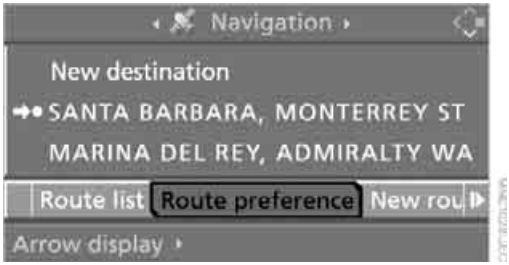
Selecting route

You can influence the calculated route by choosing certain route criteria. You can change the route criteria as often as you like while entering the destination and whenever the destination guidance is active.

The route is planned according to fixed rules. The type of road is taken into account, e.g. whether it is a highway or a winding road. The road types are stored on the navigation DVD. As a result, the routes recommended by the navigation system may not always be the same ones that you would choose based on personal experience.

Changing route criteria

1. Select "Navigation" and press the controller.
2. Change into the third field from the top. Turn the controller until "Route preference" is selected and press the controller.



The various criteria are listed on the Control Display.

3. Select a route criterion for the route:
   - ▷ "With highways"
     Highways and major traffic arteries are given priority
   - ▷ "Avoid highways"
     Highways are avoided where possible
   - ▷ "Fast route"
     The short traveling time, being a combination of the shortest possible route and the fastest roads
   - ▷ "Short route"
     Short route, irrespective of how fast or slow progress will be

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

4. Press the controller.

The route criterion is highlighted.

5. If necessary, select an additional route criterion and then press the controller:
   - ▷ "Dynamic route"
     Automatic changing of the route in case of traffic obstructions. Depending on the type of road and the nature and length of the traffic obstruction, the route can also be calculated so that you travel through the traffic obstruction.
   - ▷ "Avoid tollroads"
     Tollroads are avoided where possible.
   - ▷ "Avoid ferries"
     Ferries are avoided where possible.

To exit the menu:
Select the arrow and press the controller.

The route criteria can also be changed in the arrow or map display.

1. Select the symbol for the route criterion and press the controller.
2. Select a route criterion and press the controller.

Word matching principle

The system supports the word matching principle to make it easier for you to enter the names of streets or towns/cities. The system runs ongoing checks, comparing your destination entries with the data stored on the navigation DVD as the basis for instant response. The user benefits include:

- ▷ Names of specific locations can also vary from the official versions if you are using a spelling that is customary in another country.

  Example:

  Instead of "München", you can also enter the English spelling "Munich" or the Italian spelling "Monaco".
- ▷ When you are entering the names of towns/cities and streets the system will complete them automatically as soon as enough letters are available to ensure unambiguous identification.
- ▷ The system only accepts name entries beginning with letters that are stored on the navigation DVD. The system will not accept non existent names and addresses.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Destination guidance

Starting destination guidance

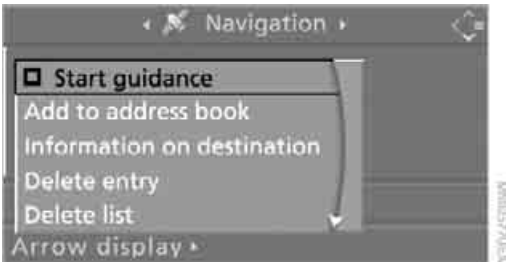
CarManuals2.com

Via iDrive

iDrive, for explanation of concept, refer to page 16.

1. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Navigation" is selected and press the controller.
2. Select a destination from the destination list and press the controller or enter a new destination, refer to page 131.

3. Select "Start guidance" and press the controller.



With programmable memory/direct selection buttons

Press the 1 ... 6 button on which the desired destination is stored. Also refer to page 22.

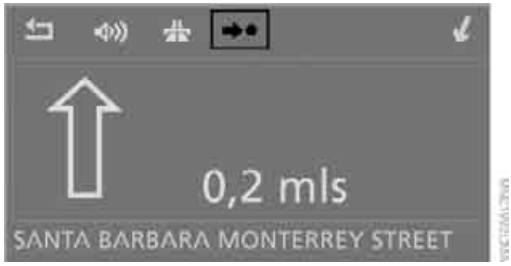
After the route has been calculated, destination guidance is indicated by arrows or a map display on the Control Display.

The destination guidance can also be started in the arrow or map display:
Select the symbol and press the controller.

During destination guidance, you can operate other equipment via iDrive at any time. You will be punctually notified of a change of direction by spoken instructions and the display of the direction arrow.

Ending/continuing destination guidance

In arrow or map display



Select the symbol and press the controller.

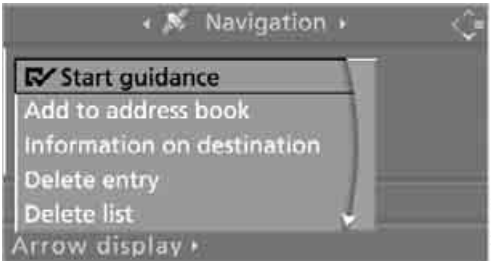
In destination list

This symbol indicates the current destination.

1. Select the current destination and press the controller.

2. Select "Start guidance" and press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG



When you park the vehicle before reaching the entered destination, the following question is displayed before beginning the next trip: "Continue guidance to destination?".

The destination guidance starts automatically after a short time.

To start the destination guidance:
Select "Yes" and press the controller.

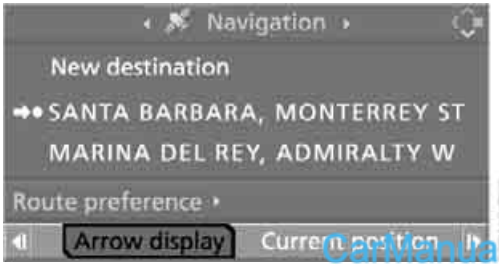
Displaying route

You have the option of displaying various views of the route during destination guidance.

▷ From another menu, you can change directly to the screen last displayed, refer to Comfort opening of menu items on page 18.◀

Displaying arrow display

1. Select "Navigation" and press the controller.
2. Change into the fourth field from the top. Turn the controller until "Arrow display" is selected and press the controller.



The arrow display is shown.

1 Switching voice instructions on/off
2 Selecting route criteria
3 Starting/ending destination guidance
4 Arrow to destination from a bird's eye view
5 Distance to the next change of direction
6 Current position
7 Direction of travel
   - ▷ Outline arrow:
     Destination guidance on the calculated route
   - ▷ Solid arrow:
     Arrow shows the route to be calculated from a bird's eye view when the vehicle is not located in an area contained on the navigation DVD, e.g. in a multi-level parking lot.

Depending on the equipment, the estimated time of arrival and the distance to the destination are displayed in the top or bottom line of the Control Display.

Before a change in direction, the representation of the arrow changes.

1 Street name for change of direction
2 Distance up to change of direction
3 Change of direction

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

To exit the menu:
Select the arrow and press the controller.

Displaying map view

You can have your current position displayed on a map. After starting the destination guidance, the planned route is shown on the map.

1. Select "Navigation" and press the controller.
2. Change into the fourth field from the top. Turn the controller until the desired map view is selected:
   - ▷ "Map facing north"
   - ▷ "Map direction of travel"
   - ▷ "Perspective"

3. Press the controller.

1 Switching voice instructions on/off
2 Starting/ending destination guidance
3 Selecting destination via map
4 Showing/hiding information last selected, refer to Selecting destination using information on page 137
5 Changing map display
   - ▷ "Map facing north"
   - ▷ "Map direction of travel"
   - ▷ "Perspective"
6 Changing route criteria
7 Manually displaying traffic information*
8 Arrow to destination from a bird's eye view

The estimated time of arrival and the distance to the destination are shown in the bottom line of the Control Display.

To exit from the menu:
Select the arrow and press the controller.

At scales of less than 250 miles/500 km, you have the option of deciding whether to orient the map to north, toward your current direction of travel, or show the map in perspective. At scales of 250 miles/500 km or greater, the map always points toward north.

Changing map display

Select the corresponding symbol and press the controller.
The next map display is displayed.

Changing scale

Turn the controller to change the scale.

Displaying streets and towns/cities of route

You can have the roads and towns/cities along the route displayed during destination guidance.

The distances remaining to be traveled on each individual road are also displayed.

1. Select "Navigation" and press the controller.
2. Change into the third field from the top. Turn the controller until "Route list" is selected and press the controller.

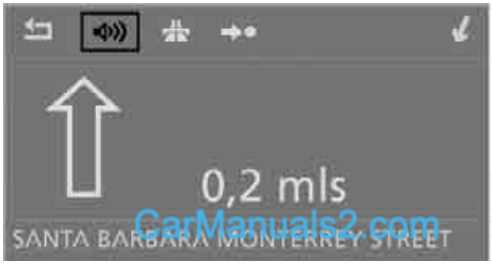
CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

To exit the menu:
Select the arrow and press the controller.

Destination guidance via voice instructions

Switching voice instructions on/off



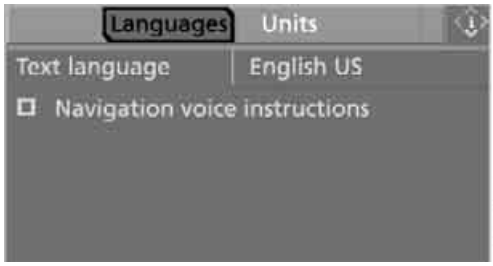
CarManuals2.com

Voice instructions can be switched on or off during the destination guidance in the arrow or map view:
Select the symbol and press the controller.

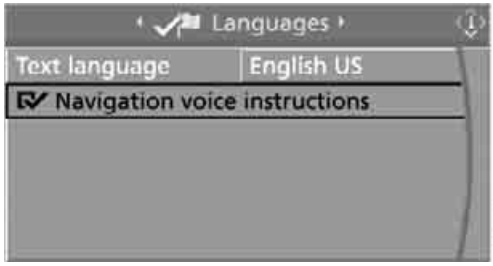
To switch the voice instructions on and off at any time:

1. Open the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.

4. Select "Language / Units" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Languages" is selected and press the controller.



6. Select "Navigation voice instructions" and press the controller.



The voice instructions are switched on.

Repeating and canceling voice instructions

With the programmable buttons on the steering wheel you can also make the following settings, refer to page 50:

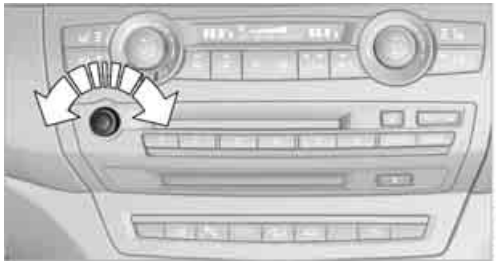
- ▷ Repeat the voice instruction:
  Press the button.
- ▷ Switch voice instructions on/off:
  Hold the button down.

Setting volume of voice instructions

The volume can only be adjusted while a voice instruction is being output.

1. Repeat the last voice instruction, if necessary.
2. Turn the button during the voice instruction to select the desired volume.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG



This volume is independent of the volume of the audio sources.

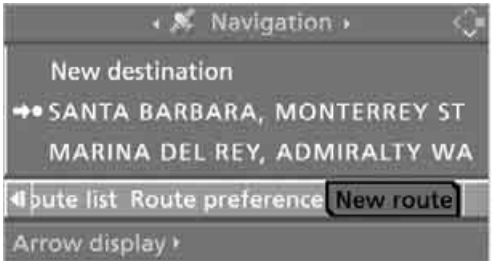
The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Changing route

During destination guidance, you can revise the navigation system's route recommendations to avoid particular stretches of road. Enter the number of miles/kilometers that you want to travel before returning to the original route.

1. Select "Navigation" and press the controller.
2. Change into the third field from the top. Turn the controller until "New route" is selected and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com



3. Turn the controller to enter the desired number and press the controller.

The route is recalculated.

To exit from the menu without changing the route:
Select the arrow and press the controller.

Traffic information*

In population centers you can display traffic information from radio stations that transmit information of the Traffic Info traffic warning service. This information of the traffic warning services is constantly updated using measuring data from traffic routing centers and information from traffic congestion indicators.
During destination guidance the traffic information located near you on the route is automatically displayed. Regardless of whether the destination guidance is active, you can display the traffic information in the map view or in a list.

Switching reception of traffic information on/off

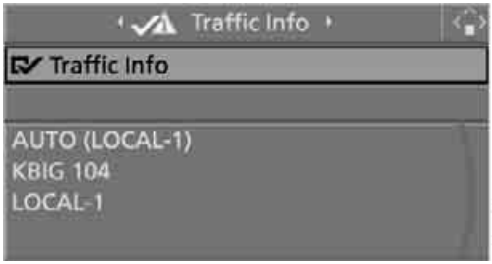
iDrive, for explanation of concept, refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Turn the controller until "Settings" is selected and press the controller.

4. Turn the controller until "Traffic Info" is selected and press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

5. Select "Traffic Info" and press the controller.



The traffic information can be transferred and displayed.

"AUTO": automatic selection of the Traffic Info station with the strongest reception.

Depending on the station, either the station name, frequency, local number or other information is displayed.◀

Manually displaying traffic information

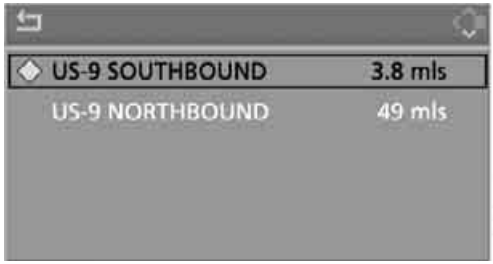
During destination guidance

Traffic information can be displayed manually during destination guidance in the arrow or map view.

If the symbol is shown with a red border, traffic information is available for the planned route.

Select the symbol and press the controller.

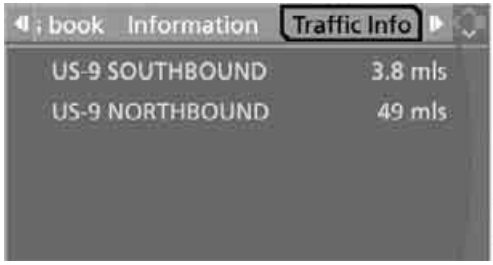
During destination guidance, the traffic information on the planned route is marked with a yellow lozenge.



The current traffic information is shown on the Control Display sorted according to the distance to the current vehicle position.

With destination guidance switched off

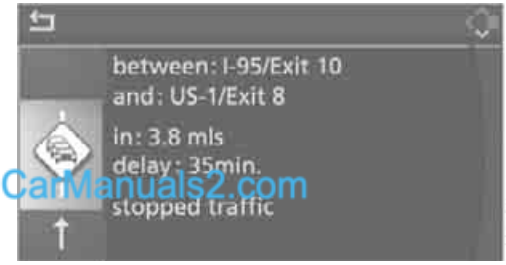
1. Open the start menu.
2. Move the controller to the right to open "Navigation".
3. Select "Traffic Info" and press the controller.



The current traffic information is shown on the Control Display sorted according to the distance to the current vehicle position.

Displaying detailed traffic information

Select traffic information from the displayed list and press the controller.



CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

To exit from the menu:
Select the arrow and press the controller.

Depiction of traffic information in map view

The traffic information symbols are shown in the map view up to a scale of 100 miles/200 km.

Traffic event with map scales greater than 5 miles/10 km, arrow points in the direction of travel concerned

Several traffic events have been received. Select a smaller scale to display these individually.

With a scale of up to 5 miles/10 km, additional information is displayed. The length, direction and effect of a traffic obstruction are indicated with arrows along the route, e.g.

Slow traffic or other traffic event

Traffic back up

Stopped traffic

Stopped traffic in both directions of travel

Along planned route

Yellow symbol with the traffic obstruction symbol.

Outside planned route

- Map scale up to 5 miles/10 km:
  White symbol with black or gray border with the traffic obstruction symbol
- Map scale from 10 miles/20 km:
  White symbol with black border with an arrow in the direction concerned

Traffic information during destination guidance

The system behavior varies depending on whether "Dynamic route" is selected:

- "Dynamic route" is not selected:
  If a traffic obstruction is reported to the navigation system, you will be provided with certain information from a distance of approx. 25 miles/40 km, e.g. the length of the traffic congestion.
  The last possible junction will be displayed shortly before this.
- "Dynamic route" is selected:
  The route is automatically changed in case of traffic obstructions.
  Depending on the type of road and the nature and length of the traffic obstruction, the route can also be calculated so that you travel through the traffic obstruction.

This information is also displayed if you have called up another application on the Control Display.

Bypassing traffic congestion

Select "Detour" and press the controller.
The navigation system determines a new route to bypass the traffic congestion.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Symbols for traffic information

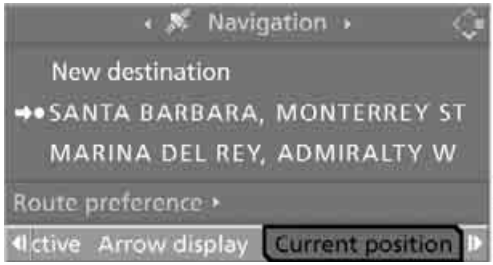
- Traffic light failure
- Roadworks
- General traffic obstruction
  Transport of hazardous load
- Danger
- Low clearance
- No parking
- Fog
- Heavy rain
- Slippery road
- Cross winds
- Smog
- Road close
- Slow traffic
- Traffic back up
- Stopped traffic
- Icy roads
- Uneven surface
- Accident
- Lane closure
- Delay
- Police checkpoint

CarManuals2.com

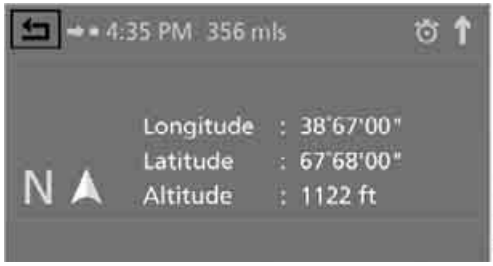
Displaying current position

You can have your current position displayed even when the destination guidance is switched off.

1. Select "Navigation" and press the controller.
2. Change into the fourth field from the top. Turn the controller until "Current position" is selected and press the controller.



The current position of your BMW is displayed.



If the navigation system is unable to identify a town or city, your current map coordinates will appear.

To exit the menu:
Select the arrow and press the controller.

You can also have the current position displayed on a map, refer to page 145.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

What to do if ...

What to do if ...

- a navigation DVD is inserted, but an instruction to insert the DVD appears on the Control Display?
  The navigation DVD may not be the correct DVD for the navigation system. This information is indicated on the DVD label.
- you request the current position of your vehicle, but do not receive a precise display?
  The system is unable to receive enough GPS signals at your current position due to obstructions, your position is not yet available on your navigation DVD, or the system is in the process of calculating your position. Reception is best when you have an unobstructed view to the sky.
- the destination guidance does not accept a destination?
  The data of the destination is not stored on the navigation DVD that is loaded. Select a destination that is as close as possible to the original.
- the destination guidance does not accept an address without the street name?
  On the navigation DVD, no downtown area can be determined for the city or town entered. Enter any street, or a destination such as the railway station in the selected town, and then start the destination guidance.
- you want to enter a destination for the destination guidance, but it is not possible to select the letters for your desired entry?
  The data of the destination is not stored on the navigation DVD that is loaded. In this case, the system will not offer you any letters to choose from. Select a destination that is as close as possible to the original.
- the system stops furnishing directions on which way to turn as you approach intersections?
  You are driving in an area that has not yet been completely recorded on the navigation DVD. Instead of an arrow indicating a turn, you will see an arrow which indicates the general direction of your planned route. Or you have left the recommended route and the system requires a few seconds to calculate a new recommended route.
- the navigation system does not react to entries?
  If the battery was disconnected, it takes about 10 minutes before the system is once again operational.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Entertainment

Operation of the radio and CD as well as their tone settings are described in this chapter.

CarManuals2.com

On/Off and settings

The following audio and video sources have common controls and adjustment options:

- ▷ Radio
- ▷ CD player
- ▷ CD changer*

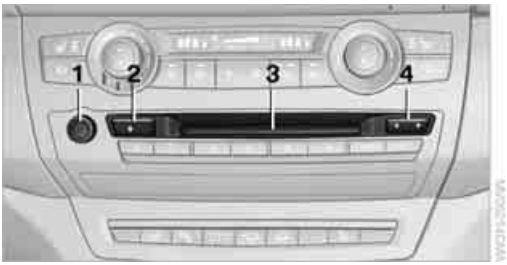
Controls

The audio and video sources can be operated with:

- ▷ Buttons in the area of the CD player
- ▷ iDrive
- ▷ Buttons on steering wheel, refer to page 11
- ▷ Programmable memory/direct selection buttons, refer to page 21

Buttons on CD player

Equipment with a single drive



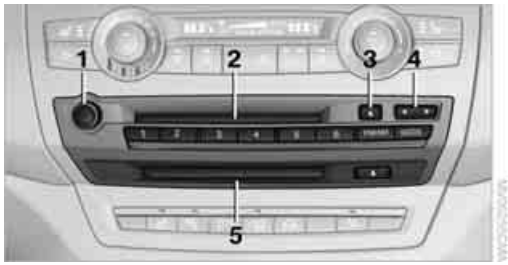
1 Entertainment sound output on/off, volume
   - ▷ Press: switch on/off.
     When you switch on, the last set radio station or CD track is played.
   - ▷ Turn: adjust volume.

2 ▲ Eject CD

3 Drive for audio CDs

4 ◄ ► Station scan/track search
   - ▷ Change radio station.
   - ▷ Select track for CD player and CD changer.

Equipment with two drives



1 Entertainment sound output on/off, volume
   - ▷ Press: switch on/off.
     When you switch on, the last set radio station or CD track is played.
   - ▷ Turn: adjust volume.

2 Drive for audio CDs

3 ▲ Eject CD

4 ◄ ► Station scan/track search
   - ▷ Change radio station.
   - ▷ Select track for CD player and CD changer.

5 Drive for navigation DVDs

Operation via iDrive

iDrive, for explanation of concept, refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller backwards to open "Entertainment".

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

You have the following choices:

- ▷ "FM" and "AM": radio reception
- ▷ "WB": Weather Band station
- ▷ "SAT": satellite radio*
- ▷ "CD": CD player or changer
- ▷ "AUX": external audio device
- ▷ "Set": depending on the audio source, other adjustments can be made, e.g. with the radio: update station with strongest reception, store station, tone control, sample stations.

CarManuals2.com

▷ From another menu, you can change directly to the screen last displayed, refer to Comfort opening of menu items on page 18.◀

From radio readiness, the selected audio source is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Switching on/off

To switch the Entertainment sound output on and off:
Press knob **1** on the CD player.

This symbol on the Control Display indicates that sound output is switched off.

For equipment with a single drive, the sound output is available for approx. 20 minutes with the ignition switched off.
Switch on the sound output again for this purpose.

Adjusting volume

Turn knob **1** on the CD player until the desired volume is set.

You can also adjust the volume with buttons on the steering wheel, refer to page 11.

From radio readiness, the setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Tone control

You can alter various tone settings, e.g. treble and bass, or the speed-dependent volume increase.
The tone settings are set for all audio sources at once.

From radio readiness, the settings are stored for the remote control currently in use.

Changing tone settings

1. **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Turn the controller until "Settings" is selected and press the controller.
4. Select "Audio" or "Tone / volume" and press the controller.

The tone settings can also be selected when you have opened "Entertainment" in the start menu:
Select "Set" and then "Tone", and press the controller.

Treble and bass

1. Select "Treble / Bass" and press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

2. Move the controller to the left or right to select "Treble" or "Bass".

3. Turn the controller until the desired setting is selected.

Balance and fader

You can adjust the volume distribution in the same manner as "Treble / Bass".

▷ "Balance": left/right volume distribution

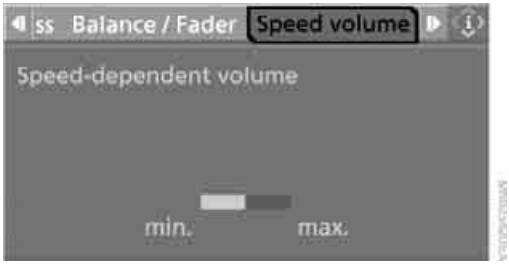
▷ "Fader": front/rear volume distribution

Speed-dependent volume control

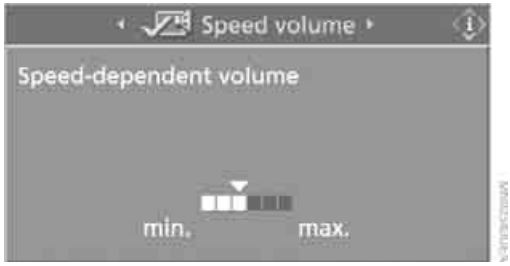
The speed-dependent volume control automatically increases the volume with increasing speed. You can set various stages for the increase in volume.

When equipped with two drives:

1. Select "Speed volume" and press the controller.

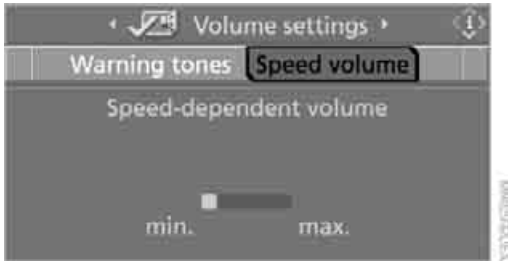


2. Turn the controller:
The adjustment is applied; the field can be changed.



If vehicle is equipped with a single drive:

1. Select "Volume settings" and press the controller.
2. Change to the second field from the top if necessary. Select "Speed volume" and press the controller.



3. Turn the controller:
The adjustment is applied; the field can be changed.

CarManuals2.com

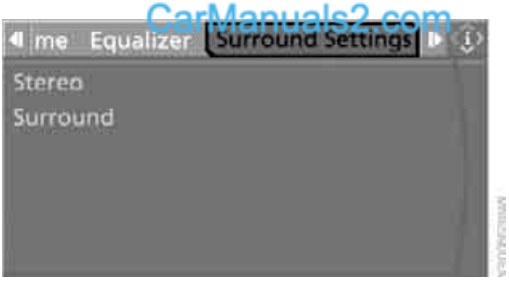
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Professional HiFi System*

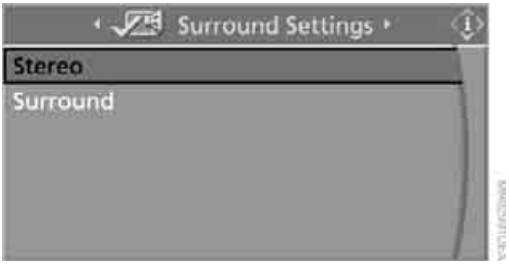
You can choose between stereo and multi-channel playback, surround.

1. Select "Surround Settings" and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com



2. Select "Stereo" or "Surround".

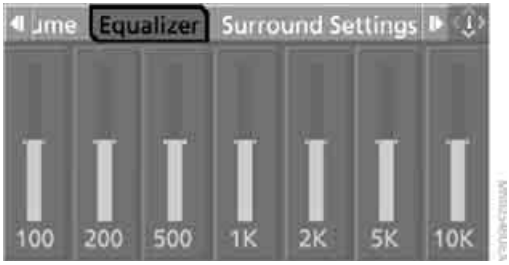


3. Press the controller.
   The spatial sound effect is activated.

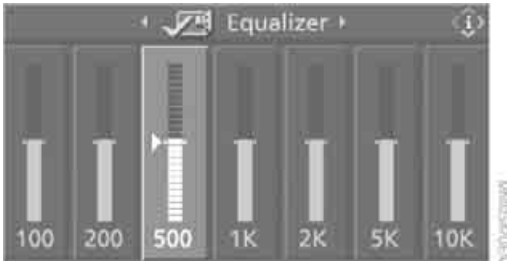
Equalizer*

You can set individual sound frequency ranges.

1. Select "Equalizer" and press the controller.



2. Move the controller to the left or right to select the desired frequency range.



3. Turn the controller until the desired setting is selected.

Resetting tone settings

You can reset all tone settings to the default settings.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Turn the controller until "Settings" is selected and press the controller.
4. Select "Audio" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Reset" is selected and press the controller.

6. When equipped with two drives:
   Select "Yes" and press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Radio

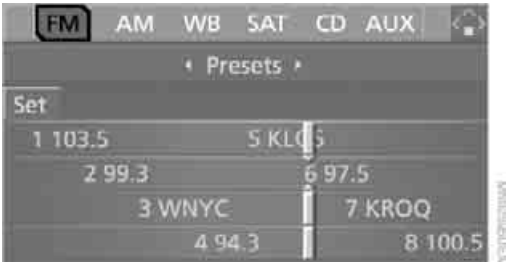
Your radio provides reception of the FM and AM wavebands.

Listening to radio

Press the knob if the sound output is switched off.

iDrive, for explanation of concept, refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller backwards to open "Entertainment".
3. Change to upper field if necessary. Select "FM" or "AM".



4. Press the controller.

Stations are shown on the Control Display on the basis of various selection criteria, e.g. "Presets".

If "Autostore" does not display any stations or if the stations displayed can no longer be received in the AM reception range, to update the station with the strongest signal, refer to page 159.

Changing stations

Turn the controller.

Buttons on CD player

Press the button for the corresponding direction.
The system changes to the next displayed station.
You can also change stations with buttons on the steering wheel, refer to page 11.

Changing selection criteria

In addition to the stations currently displayed, you can have stations with another selection criterion displayed.

You can choose from the following selection criteria:

- ▷ "All stations":
  Stations that can currently be received in the "FM" waveband.
- ▷ "Autostore":
  The stations with the strongest received signals in the "AM" waveband.
- ▷ "Presets":
  Stations you have previously stored, refer to page 160.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

To change the selection criterion:

1. Change into the second field from the top.
2. Select the selection criterion and press the controller.

Sampling stations, scan

The system automatically plays a brief sample from each of the stations on the current waveband.

1. Select "FM" or "AM" and press the controller.
   "Set" is selected.
2. Press the controller.
   Other menu items are displayed.
3. Select "Scan" and press the controller.

The stations are sampled.

To end sampling:

1. Press the controller.
2. Select "Scan" and press the controller.

This cancels sampling of the stations, and the radio remains on the current station.

Selecting frequency manually

With "Manual" you can select stations that are received in addition to those displayed.

1. Select "FM" or "AM" and press the controller.
2. Change into the second field from the top.
3. Select "Manual" and press the controller.

4. Turn the controller to set a certain frequency.

Updating stations with best reception

If you are on a longer journey and leave the transmission range of the stations originally set, you can update the list of stations in the AM range with the best reception.

1. Select "AM" and press the controller.
2. Change into the second field from the top.
3. Select "Autostore" and press the controller.
   "Set" is selected.

4. Press the controller.
   Other menu items are displayed.

Buttons on CD player

CarManuals2.com

To sample the stations, press and hold the button for the corresponding direction.

To end scanning, press the button again.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

5. Select "Autostore" and press the controller.

The display of the stations with the strongest reception is updated. The frequencies of the stations are displayed.

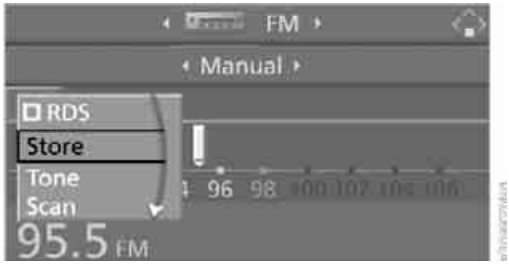
Storing stations

Via iDrive

1. Select "FM" or "AM" and press the controller.
2. Change into the second field from the top. Turn the controller until the desired selection criterion is selected and press the controller.
3. Select the desired frequency or station. "Set" is selected.

4. Press the controller.
   Other menu items are displayed.

5. Select "Store" and press the controller.



   "Presets" is displayed.
6. Turn the controller until the desired memory position is selected.
7. Press the controller.
   The station is stored.

CarManuals2.com

The stations of the last selection criterion are displayed once again after a short time.

From radio readiness, the stations are stored for the remote control currently in use.

With programmable memory/direct selection buttons

You can also store a station on the programmable memory/direct selection buttons, also refer to page 21.

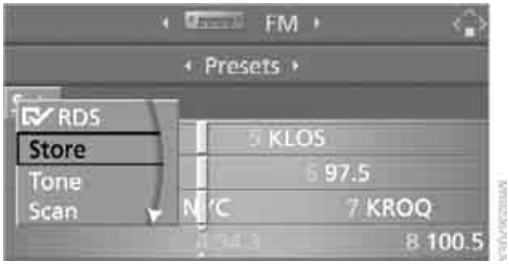
1. Select a station.
2. 1 ... 6 Press and hold desired button.

Changing a memory position

1. Select "Presets" and press the controller.
2. Select the desired station.
   "Set" is selected.
3. Press the controller.
   Other menu items are displayed.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

4. Select "Store" and press the controller.



5. Turn the controller until the desired memory position is selected.
   The number of the memory position appears beside the name or frequency of the station.
6. Press the controller.
   The station is stored.

RDS Radio Data System

RDS transmits additional information in the FM frequency range. If the reception conditions are good, the station names are shown on the Control Display. If the reception is weak or disrupted, it can take some time before the station names are displayed.

Switching RDS on/off*

1. Select "FM" and press the controller.
   "Set" is selected.
2. Press the controller.
   Other menu items are displayed.
3. Select "RDS" and press the controller.

RDS is activated.

Weather news flashes*

Weather Radio is a service of the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) of the US Department of Trade. Weather news flashes are repeated every four to six minutes and are routinely updated at intervals of one to three hours, and more often when necessary. Most stations operate 24 hours a day. In case of a storm, the National Weather Service interrupts the routine weather news and transmits special warning messages instead. If you have a question about NOAA Weather Radio, please contact the nearest office of the National Weather Service. Details are also provided on the Internet at www.nws.noaa.gov.

Calling up weather news flashes

1. Select "WB" and press the controller.

2. Select a station.

The station for weather news flashes may be unavailable in some regions.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Satellite radio*

You can receive over 100 different channels with high sound quality.

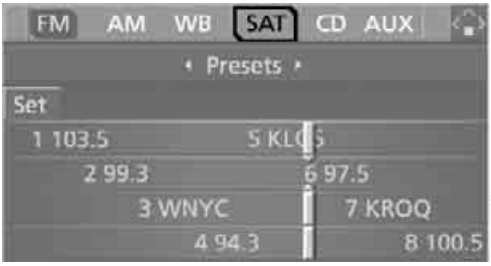
The channels are offered to you in predefined packages. To receive the channels of your choice, you must have this package enabled.

With this new technology the signal may fail, causing interruptions in reception.◀

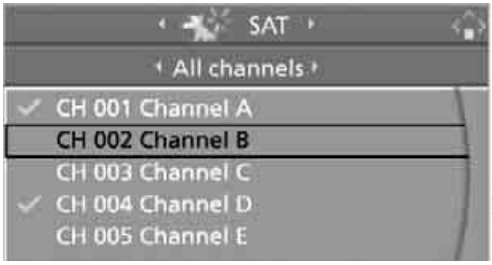
Enabling or disabling channels

iDrive, for explanation of concept, refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller backwards to open "Entertainment".
3. Select "SAT".



4. Press the controller.



The channels are displayed.
✔ These channels are enabled.

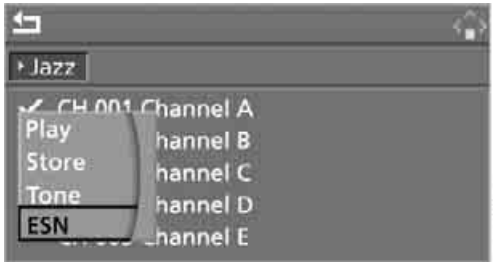
Enabling

1. Select a channel that has not yet been enabled and press the controller.
   A telephone number and the electronic serial number, ESN, are displayed.

   The electronic serial number is required for enabling or disabling.◀
2. To enable the channels:
   Dial the phone number.

Disabling

1. Select an enabled channel and press the controller.



2. Select "ESN" and press the controller.
   The electronic serial number, ESN, is displayed.

   The electronic serial number is required for disabling.◀
3. To disable the channels:
   Dial the phone number.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Selecting and storing channel

1. Select "SAT" and press the controller.

Channels are shown on the Control Display sorted on the basis of selection criteria.

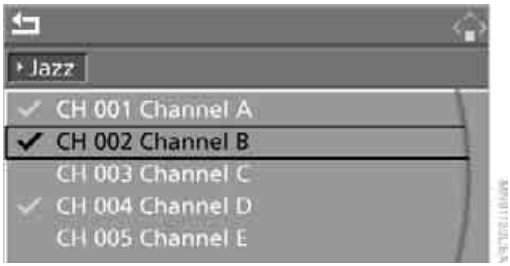
2. Select a menu item:
   - ▷ "Presets":
     Up to twelve channels you have stored previously.
   - ▷ "All channels":
     All channels are displayed.
   - ▷ "Categories":
     All channels, sorted by categories, e.g. news, jazz.

CarManuals2.com

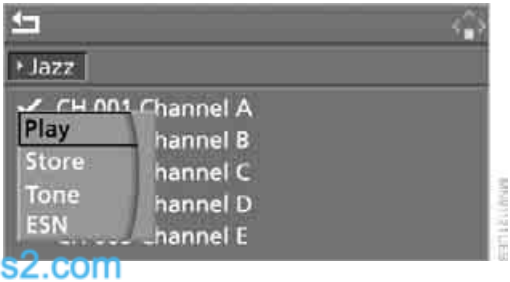
3. Press the controller.
4. If "Categories" has been selected:
   Select the desired category and press the controller.

The channels of this category are displayed.

5. ✓ Select a channel marked with this symbol.

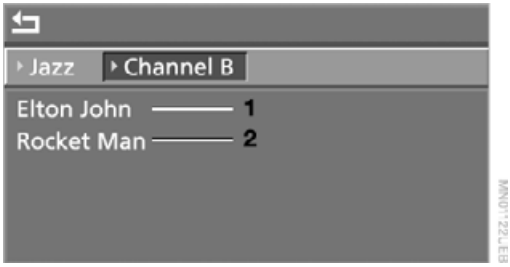


6. Press the controller.
   Other menu items are displayed.
7. Select "Play" and press the controller.



Additional information

The name of the channel and additional information on the current track are displayed, e.g. the name of the artist.



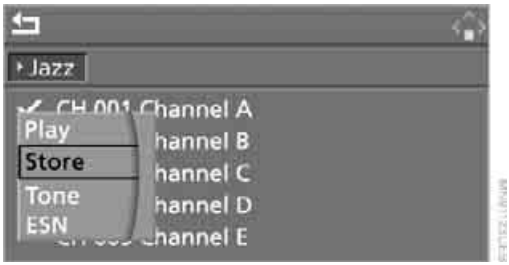
1 Artist

2 Track

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Storing channel

1. Select desired channel.
2. Press the controller.
   Other menu items are displayed.
3. Select "Store" and press the controller.



   "Presets" is displayed.
4. Turn the controller to select a memory location and press the controller.

The channel is stored. The channels of the last selection criterion are displayed once again after a short time.

Changing channel with buttons on CD player

Press the button for the corresponding direction.
The system switches to the next enabled channel.

Notes

If no signal can be received for more than four seconds, a message is displayed on the Control Display.

Reception may not be possible for certain reasons, e.g. environmental influences or topographical conditions. The satellite radio has no influence on this.
The signal may not be available in tunnels or underground garages, next to tall buildings, near trees, mountains or other sources of radio interference.
Reception is usually possible again as soon as the signal is available again.◀

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

CD player and CD changer*

Listening to CDs

CarManuals2.com

When equipped with two drives:
The upper drive is for audio CDs.

Compressed audio files

CDs with compressed audio files, i.e. MP3, can be played by the CD player and CD changer.

Starting CD player

Inserting CD

Insert the CD into the drive with the labeled side up.
The CD is automatically pulled in. Playback starts automatically if the sound output is on.
For CDs with compressed audio files, it can take up to approx. 1 minute to read in the data depending on the directory structure.

Via iDrive

Starting playback when there is already a CD in the drive:

iDrive, for explanation of concept, refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller backwards to open "Entertainment".
3. Change to upper field if necessary. Select "CD" and press the controller.

4. Change to the second field from the top if necessary. On vehicles with a CD changer, select "CD" and press the controller to start the CD player.

Playback starts automatically if the sound output is switched on.

With programmable memory/direct selection buttons

You can store the function CD player on the programmable memory/direct selection buttons to start the CD player, refer to page 21.

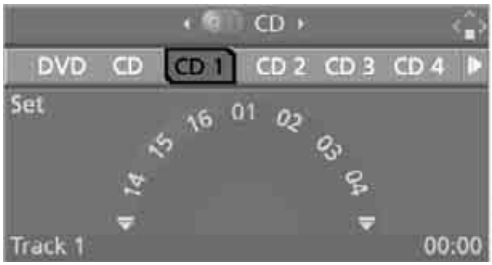
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Starting CD changer

Filling CD changer, refer to page 169.

Via iDrive

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller backwards to open "Entertainment".
3. Change to upper field if necessary. Select "CD" and press the controller.
4. Change to the second field from the top if necessary. Select the desired CD and press the controller.



At the end of the last track, the next CD will be selected.

With programmable memory/direct selection buttons

You can store a CD compartment of the CD changer on the programmable memory/direct selection buttons to start the CD changer, refer to page 21.

Selecting a track

Buttons on CD player

Press the ◄ ► button for the corresponding direction repeatedly until you reach the desired track.
The track is displayed on the Control Display.

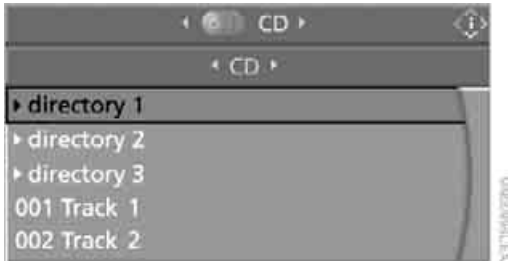
You can also change the track with buttons on the steering wheel, refer to page 11.

Via iDrive

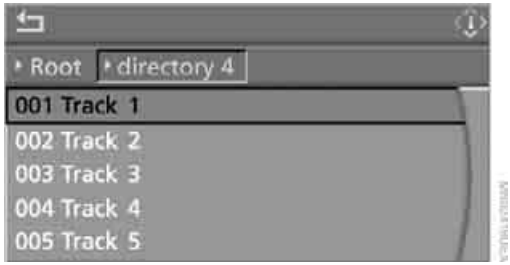
Select a track by turning the controller.

Compressed audio files

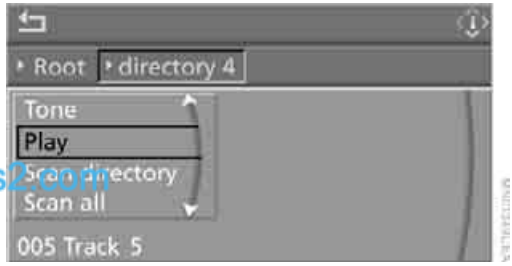
1. Select the directory if necessary and press the controller.



2. Select the track and press the controller.



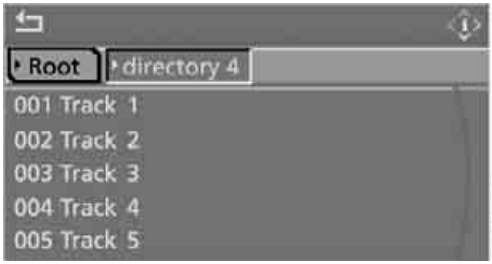
3. Select "Play" and press the controller.



CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

To change the directory:
Select the directory and press the controller.



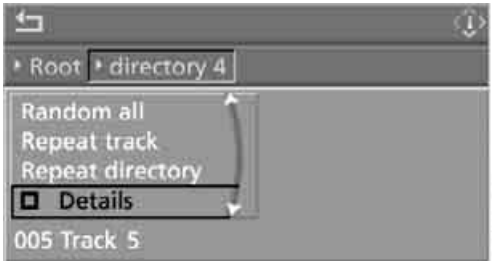
To exit from the menu:
Select the arrow and press the controller.

For equipment with two drives, you can store a certain track on the programmable memory/ direct selection buttons, refer to page 21.

Displaying information on track

With compressed audio files, you can display any information stored on the current track, e.g. the name of the artist.

1. Press the controller.
2. Select "Details" and press the controller.



The information for the current track are displayed.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Sampling tracks, scan

The system automatically plays a brief sample from each of the tracks on the current CD.

1. Select "Set" and press the controller.
   Other menu items are displayed.

2. Select "Scan" and press the controller.

To end sampling:

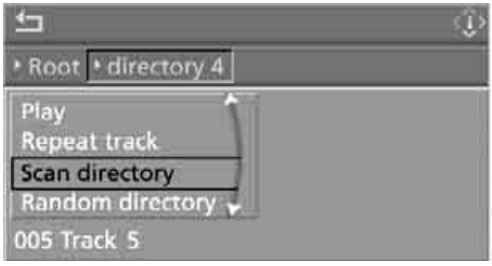
1. Press the controller.
2. Select "Scan" and press the controller.

This cancels sampling of the tracks, and the player remains on the current track.

Compressed audio files

1. Select the current track and press the controller.
2. Select the desired menu item:
   - ▷ To sample all tracks of the current directory, select "Scan directory" and press the controller.
   - ▷ To sample all tracks of the CD, select "Scan all" and press the controller.

Carmanuals2.com



To end sampling:

1. Press the controller.
2. Select "Scan directory" or "Scan all" and press the controller.

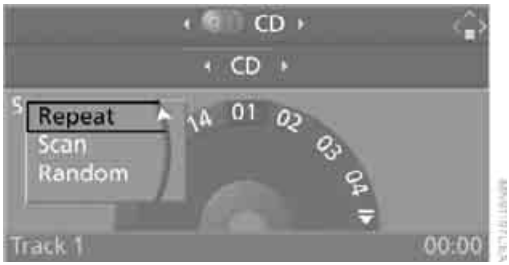
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

This cancels sampling, and the player remains on the current track.

Repeating a track

1. Select "Set" and press the controller. Other menu items are displayed.

2. Select "Repeat" and press the controller.



The current track on the CD is repeated.

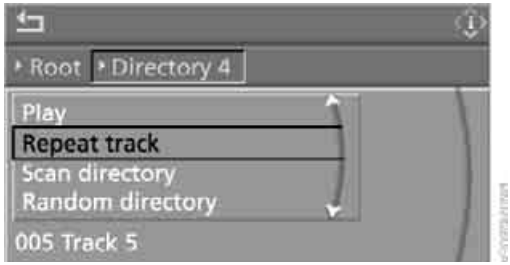
To stop repeating:

1. Press the controller again.
2. Select "Repeat" and press the controller.

Compressed audio files

1. Select the current track and press the controller.
2. Select the desired menu item:
   - ▷ To repeat the selected track, select "Repeat track" and press the controller.
   - ▷ To repeat all tracks of the current directory, select "Repeat directory" and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com



To stop repeating:

1. Press the controller.
2. Select "Repeat track" or "Repeat directory" and press the controller.

Random play sequence

In this mode, the tracks on the current CD are played once in a random sequence.

1. Select "Set" and press the controller. Other menu items are displayed.
2. Select "Random" and press the controller.

To stop random function:

1. Press the controller.
2. Select "Random" and press the controller.

Compressed audio files

1. Select the current track and press the controller.
2. Select the desired menu item:
   - ▷ To play all tracks of the current directory in random order, select "Random directory" and press the controller.
   - ▷ To play all tracks of the CD in random order, select "Random all" and press the controller.

To stop random function:

1. Press the controller.
2. Select "Random directory" or "Random all" and press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Fast forward/reverse

Buttons on CD player:

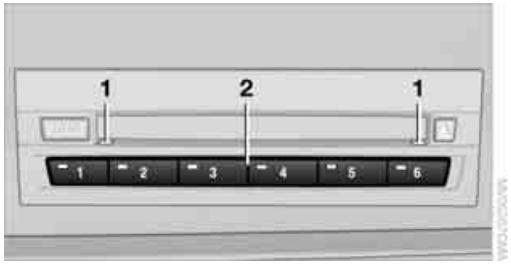
Press and hold the button for the corresponding direction.
The tracks can be listened to with some distortion.

CarManuals2.com

CD changer

The BMW CD changer for six CDs is installed in the glove compartment.

Controls and displays



1 LEDs on CD slot
Flash when CD can be inserted.

2 Buttons for CD compartments
LED lights up when CD compartment is filled.

Filling CD changer

1. Press the LOAD button.
   The LED on the first empty compartment flashes.
2. Select another CD compartment if necessary:
   Press the 1 ... 6 button.
3. When the LEDs on the CD slot **1** flash, push in the CD.

Do not push in the CD until the LEDs on the CD slot **1** flash, as otherwise the CD or the CD changer may be damaged.◀

Filling empty CD compartments

1. Hold down the LOAD button.
   The LEDs on the empty CD compartments flash.
2. Push in the CDs separately.

Do not push in the CD until the LEDs on the CD slot **1** flash, as otherwise the CD or the CD changer may be damaged.◀

The CDs are automatically stored in the compartments.

Removing CDs from CD changer

1. Press the button.
2. Press the 1 ... 6 button to select the CD compartment.
   The CD is pushed out of the CD changer somewhat.
3. Remove the CD.

Removing all CDs from CD changer

1. Hold down the button.
   The CDs are pushed out of the CD changer somewhat consecutively.
2. Remove the CDs.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Notes

BMW CD/DVD players and changers are officially designated Class 1 laser products. Do not operate if the cover is damaged, otherwise severe eye damage can result.
Do not use self-recorded CDs/DVDs with labels applied as these can become detached during playback due to heat build-up and can cause irreparable damage to the device.
Only use round CDs/DVDs with a standard diameter of 4.7 in/12 cm and do not play CDs/DVDs with an adapter, e.g. CD singles, as otherwise the CD/DVD or the adapter can jam and may no longer eject properly.
Do not use a combined CD/DVD, e.g. DVD^{Plus}, otherwise the CD/DVD can jam and will no longer eject.◀

General malfunctions

BMW CD/DVD changers and players have been optimized for performance in vehicles. In some instances they may be more sensitive to faulty CDs/DVDs than stationary devices would be.

If a CD/DVD cannot be played, first check if it has been inserted correctly.

Humidity

High levels of humidity can lead to condensation on the CD/DVD or the laser's scan lens and temporarily prevent playback.

Malfunctions with individual CDs/DVDs

If malfunctions only occur with individual CDs/DVDs, one of the following factors may be the cause.

Self-recorded CDs/DVDs

Possible reasons for malfunctions with self-recorded CDs/DVDs are, e.g., inconsistent data-creation or recording processes, or poor quality or high age of the CD/DVD blank.

Only label CDs/DVDs on the upper side with a pen intended for this purpose.

CarManuals2.com

Avoiding damage

Avoid fingerprints, dust, scratches and moisture.
Store CDs/DVDs in a sleeve.
Do not subject CDs/DVDs to temperatures over 122 °F /50 °C, high levels of humidity or direct sunlight.

CDs/DVDs with copy protection

CDs/DVDs are often provided with a copy protection feature by the manufacturer. This can mean that some CDs/DVDs cannot be played or can only be played to a limited extent.

Care

If necessary, clean the reflective scanning side of the CDs/DVDs with a commercially available cleaning cloth by wiping in straight lines from the center outward. For additional information on the care of CDs/DVDs, refer to the Caring for your vehicle brochure.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

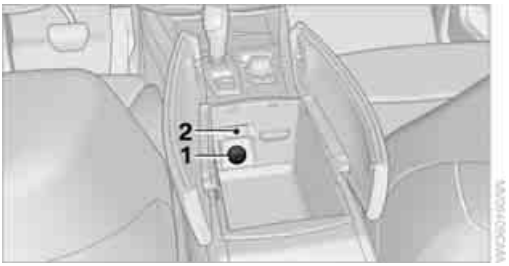
External audio device

You can connect an external audio device, e.g. an MP3 player, and play the sound via the vehicle loudspeakers. The sound can be adjusted via iDrive.

Connecting

Fold up the center armrest.

Open the covers of the center armrest.



1 Power supply for your additional device: Socket with removable cap
Depending on the vehicle's equipment, you can use the cigarette lighter or the socket located in the rear.

2 Connection for audio playback: Jack plug ⅛ in/3.5 mm

For audio playback via the vehicle loudspeakers, connect the headphone or Line-Out connection of the device to the connection **2**.

Starting audio playback

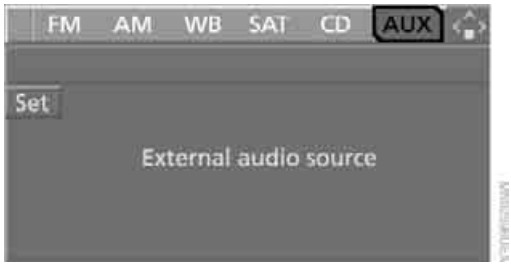
The audio device must be switched on.

CarManuals2.com

Via iDrive

iDrive, for explanation of concept, refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller backwards to open "Entertainment".
3. Select "AUX" and press the controller.



4. Adjust volume and sound if necessary.

With programmable memory/direct selection buttons

You can store the function external audio device on the programmable memory/direct selection buttons to start audio playback, refer to page 21.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

DVD system in rear*

With the DVD system in the rear you can play CDs and DVDs with audio, video and image data. External audio and video devices can also be connected and played via the DVD system in the rear.
Tone output is possible both via headphones and via the vehicle loudspeakers.

You can operate the DVD system in the rear with the buttons on the CD/DVD player or with the remote control.

▷ Some functions can only be operated with the remote control.◀

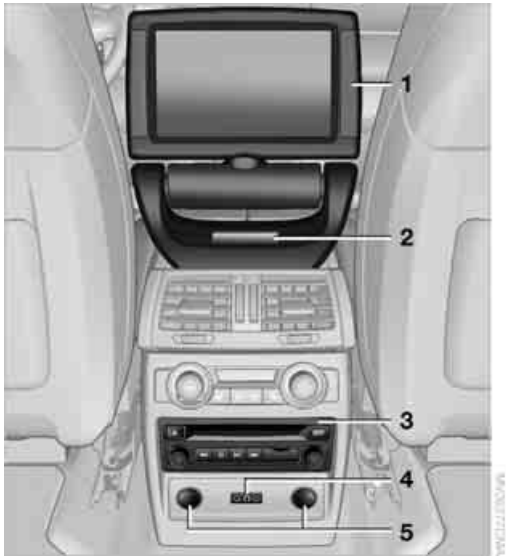
Enabling DVD system

Enable the DVD system with iDrive. For explanation of concept, refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Unlock rear menu" and press the controller.
5. Select "Rear enabled" and press the controller.

The DVD system is enabled.

Controls



1 Display screen
2 Infrared interface for headphones
3 CD/DVD player
4 Headphone connection:
Jack plug ⅛ in/ 3.5 mm
5 12 V sockets, refer to page 115

Folding in display screen

The display screen can be folded in when using the ski bag or when transporting bulky pieces of luggage.

⚠ Do not open the covers of the center armrest or rest your arm on the display screen with the display screen folded in, as otherwise the display screen may be damaged.◀

CarManuals2.com

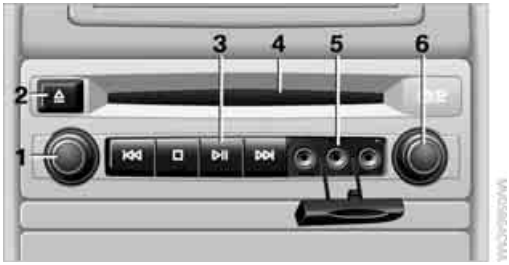
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

1. Turn display screen, arrow **1**.
   The display screen switches off.
2. Fold in display screen, arrow **2**.

The display screen is folded out in the reverse order.

CD/DVD player

Controls



1 Press: switching DVD system on/off
Turn: volume for headphones on left

2 Eject CD, DVD

3 Start of track, reverse
Stop
Playback, pause, hold screen
Next track, fast forward

4 CD/DVD slot

5 Connection for external device: Cinch sockets with protective cap

6 Press: switching DVD system on/off
Turn: volume for headphones on right

Connecting headphones

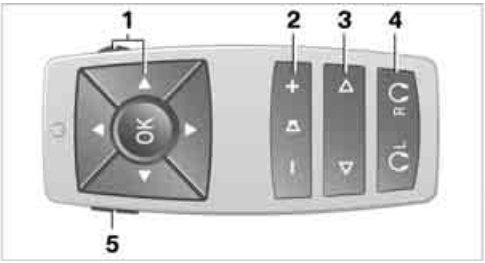
You can connect headphones with a ⅛ in/ 3.5 mm jack plug or operate them using the infrared interface.

Ask your BMW Sports Activity Vehicle Center which infrared headphones are supported by the infrared interface.

CarManuals2.com

▷ When using infrared headphones, the infrared connection between the headphones and the infrared interface may not be interrupted. This means that no obstacle may be located between them and the cover of the infrared interface may not be covered or scratched. Unfavorable lighting conditions, such as glaring ambient light, can result in poor reception.◀

Remote control



1 Menu navigation

2 Volume for headphones with jack plug

3 Change track or chapter with CD or DVD playback, fast forward/reverse

4 Switch over headphones right/left

5 Open start menu for DVD system

Menu navigation

You can navigate through the menus with the knurled wheel **1** and the buttons **1**. For explanation of concept, also refer to iDrive, page 16.

▷ Turn the knurled wheel **1**:
Selecting a menu item.

▷ Press buttons **1**:
Changing between fields.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

▷ Press the OK button:
Activating menu item.

Changing batteries

1. Press the detent and remove the cover.
2. Change the batteries. The type and installation position are marked on the bottom of the battery compartment.
3. Close the cover.

Dispose of used batteries at a collection point or at your BMW Sports Activity Vehicle Center.◀

Sound output via loudspeakers

In addition to the headphones, you can also play the sound via the vehicle loudspeakers.

As soon as a plug is inserted in the AUX-In socket in the center console, the sound output of the DVD system via the vehicle loudspeakers is interrupted.

iDrive, for explanation of concept, refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller backwards to open "Entertainment".
3. Select "AUX" and press the controller.

Switching DVD system on/off

Press the button on the CD/DVD player.

The DVD system switches on automatically when a CD or DVD is inserted.

Playing CD/DVD

The menu item with which the contents of the CD/DVD can be called up is dependent on the data on a CD or DVD:

▷ Video data via "DVD"
▷ Audio data via "CD"
▷ Images via "Photo".

CarManuals2.com

Playing videos from CD/DVD

Country codes of DVDs

Your DVD player only plays DVDs with the coding of your home region, e.g. Europe = 2. The country codes supported by your DVD are contained in the information on your DVD.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

An overview of the coding zones:

Code	Region
1	USA, Canada
2	Japan, Europe, Middle East, South Africa
3	Southeast Asia
4	Australia, Central and South America, New Zealand
5	Northwest Asia, North Africa
6	China

Starting playback

1. Push the CD/DVD into the drive with the labeled side facing upward.
   The CD/DVD is automatically pulled in.
   - ▷ Playback usually begins automatically after a few seconds.
   - ▷ If playback does not begin automatically: Select "DVD".
     Press the OK button:
2. If the DVD control or the DVD-specific menu is displayed for a DVD, select the desired option for menu guidance with the remote control buttons.

   Or:

   Press the ▶II button on the CD/DVD player.

You can control the playback with the buttons on the CD/DVD player or the DVD control.

▷ Video CDs, VCD, and Super Video CDs, SVCD, can be played like DVDs if they do not have a DVD menu of their own.◀

Ejecting CD/DVD

Press the ⏏ button on the CD/DVD player.
The DVD emerges slightly from the drive.

DVD control

With the DVD control, you can select the track and chapter, open the DVD-specific menu and operate functions such as Language, Fast forward and Reverse or Freeze frame.
A DVD can briefly deactivate functions of the DVD control, under certain circumstances while the entire DVD is being played. It is not possible to operate the DVD control under these circumstances. In this case, try to make the selection using the DVD-specific menu.

1. Press the ▲ button on the remote control during playback.

2. Press the ▶ ◀ buttons on the remote control or turn the knurled wheel to select the desired function.
3. Press the OK button.

	Function
⮌	Exit DVD control
"SET"	Settings for playing DVD
▶	Start playback
■	Stop playback
II	Activate and deactivate freeze frame
⏮ ⏭	Skip chapter
◀◀ ▶▶	Fast forward/reverse
"Menu"	Open DVD-specific menu

The DVD control disappears again after a short time if you have not selected a function.

Or:

Press the ▼ button on the remote control to exit the DVD control.

CarManuals2.com

Fast forward/reverse

Forward/reverse with DVD control

1. Press the button on the remote control during playback.
2. Select the symbol.
3. Press the button.
4. Press the button several times to increase the fast forward/reverse speed.

The DVD playback will be distorted.

To cancel fast forward/reverse:

1. Select the symbol.
2. Press the button.

Or:

Press the button on the CD/DVD player.

The DVD will start play at the point selected.

Forward/reverse with remote control

Press and hold the button until you reach the desired point.

Or:

1. During playback, turn the knurled wheel. Fast forward/reverse is interrupted.
2. Continue to turn the knurled wheel. The speed is increased.
3. Press the button on the CD/DVD player. Fast forward/reverse is interrupted.

The DVD will start play at the point selected.

Skipping chapter

You can change to the next or previous chapter during playback.

1. Press the button on the remote control during playback.
2. Select the symbol.
3. Press the button repeatedly, continuing until you reach the desired chapter.

Or:

Press the button on the left or right on the remote control repeatedly until you reach the desired chapter.

Freeze frame

1. Press the button on the remote control during playback.

2. Select the symbol.
3. Press the button.

Continue playback:

1. Select the or symbol.
2. Press the button.

As an alternative you can also stop and continue playback with the button on the CD/DVD player.

Making settings for DVD

1. Press the button during playback.

CarManuals2.com

2. Make the settings with the remote control:

▷ "Video settings":

- ▷ "Brightness", "Color" and "Contrast" of screen display.
- ▷ Additional settings can be made after changing to the top field.
  "Languages": system language of DVD system in rear.
  "Screen brightness": background brightness of screen.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

- "Tone":
  - "Treble / Bass" and "Balance": Separately adjustable for the left and right-hand headphones and the infrared headphones.
  - "Reset": The settings are reset to the default value.
- "DVD format":
  - "Standard"
  - "Zoom": full-screen playback.
- "Language": Language or sound track of DVD playback. The language advances one setting each time the menu item is selected.
- "Subtitles": Language of subtitles "00 n/a": no subtitles.
- "Title": Selection of a single track of the DVD.
- "Angle of view": Camera angle Notes or symbols that appear during the playback of a film generally point out different camera angles. These are usually only briefly available.
- "Menu": Call up the DVD-specific menu.
- "Return": Exit menu or: Press the buttons on the remote control.

Many DVDs offer dialogs and subtitles in various languages or scene descriptions for the hearing impaired. These functions are stored on the DVD.

With some DVDs, it is only possible to select language, subtitles, camera angle, or track by using the DVD-specific menu. Refer to the information on your DVD for possible selections. Entries marked in gray in the menus cannot be selected.◀

Opening DVD-specific menu

Additional functions may be available on DVDs. For example, it is possible to select from several possible plots or display information on the film.

1. Press the button on the remote control during playback.
2. Select "Menu".
3. Press the OK button.

On some DVDs you will find additional menus with "Main menu" and "Title" in which, for example, you can select music scenes.◀

To make a selection:

1. Select the ↑ ↓ → ← symbol.
2. Press the OK button until the desired function is selected.
3. Select the ↵ arrow.
4. Press the OK button.

To return to the start menu:

1. Select the ↩ arrow.
2. Press the OK button.

You can also select language, subtitles, camera angle, or track in the DVD-specific menu.
Observe the information on your DVD.◀

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Compressed video files

Playback

1. Select the directory if necessary.

2. Press the OK button.
3. Select a track.

4. Press the OK button.
5. Select "Play".

6. Press the OK button.

To change the directory:

1. Select the directory.

CarManuals2.com

2. Press the OK button.

Playback functions

1. Select track.
2. Press the OK button.
3. Select a menu item:
   - ▷ "Play":
     Start playback.
   - ▷ "Pause":
     Stop and continue playback.
   - ▷ "Repeat track":
     Repeat the selected track.
   - ▷ "Repeat directory":
     Repeat the tracks in the current directory.
4. Press the OK button.

Playing audio tracks from CD/DVD

Starting playback

Push the CD/DVD into the drive with the labeled side facing upward.
The CD/DVD is automatically pulled in.

- ▷ Playback begins automatically after a few seconds.
- ▷ If playback does not begin automatically:
  Select "CD".
  Press the OK button:

For CDs/DVDs with compressed audio files, refer to page 180, it may take approx. 1 minute

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

to read the data depending on the directory structure.

To start playback when there is already a CD/DVD in the drive:

1. Open the start menu with the remote control.
2. Select "CD".

As an alternative you can also control the playback with the buttons on the CD/DVD player.

Ejecting CD/DVD:

Press the button on the CD/DVD player.

Selecting a track

Buttons on the CD/DVD player

Press the button for the corresponding direction repeatedly until you reach the desired track.
Playback begins at the start of the track.

Via the remote control

Press the button for the corresponding direction repeatedly or turn the knurled wheel until you reach the desired track.
Playback begins at the start of the track.

Settings and playback functions for audio CDs/DVDs

1. Select "SET".
2. Press the button.

3. Make the settings with the remote control:

▷ "Tone":

  ▷ "Treble / Bass" and "Balance":
  Separately adjustable for the left and right-hand headphones and the infrared headphones.

  ▷ "Reset":
  The settings are reset to the default value.

▷ "Pause":
Stop and continue playback.

▷ "Random":
In this mode, the tracks on the CD/DVD are played once in a random sequence.

▷ "Scan":
Automatically briefly sample all tracks of the CD/DVD consecutively.

▷ "Repeat":
Repeat the current track. Select again to end.

Fast forward/reverse

Buttons on the CD/DVD player:

Press and hold the button for the corresponding direction.

Remote control:

Press and hold the button until you reach the desired point.

CarManuals2.com

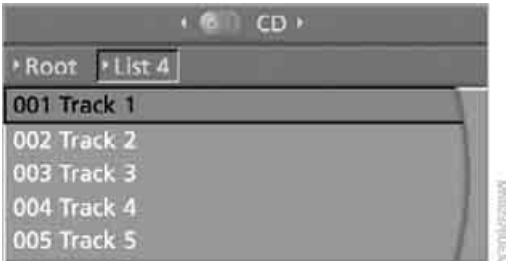
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Compressed audio files

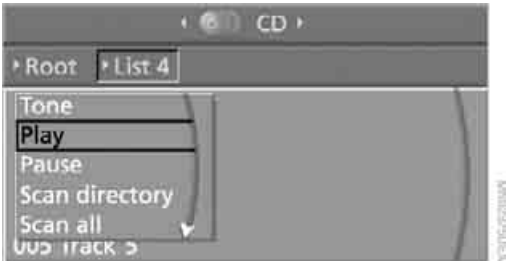
Playback

1. Select the directory if necessary.

2. Press the OK button.
3. Select a track.



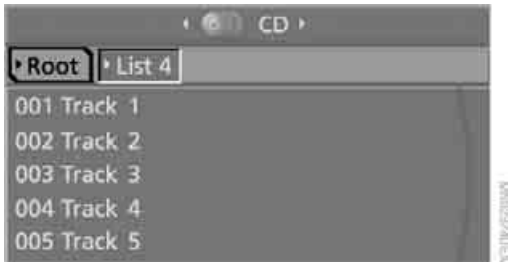
4. Press the OK button.
5. Select "Play".



6. Press the OK button.

To change the directory:

1. Select the directory.



2. Press the OK button.

Settings and playback functions for compressed audio files

1. Select a track.
2. Press the OK button.
3. Make the settings with the remote control:

▷ "Tone":

  ▷ "Treble / Bass" and "Balance":
  Separately adjustable for the left and right headphones and the infrared headphones

CarManuals2.com

  ▷ "Reset":
  The settings are reset to the default value.

▷ "Play":
Start playback.

▷ "Pause":
Stop and continue playback.

▷ "Scan directory":
Briefly sample the tracks in the current directory.

▷ "Scan all":
Briefly sample all tracks.

▷ "Random directory":
Play the titles in the current directory in a random sequence.

▷ "Random all":
Play all tracks in a random sequence.

▷ "Repeat track":
Repeat the selected track.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

▷ "Repeat directory":
Repeat the tracks in the current directory.

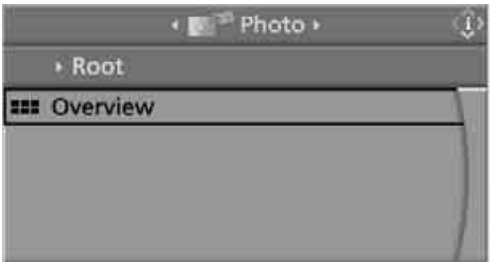
▷ "Details":
Display any stored information on the current track.

Displaying images from CD/DVD

1. Push the CD/DVD into the drive with the labeled side facing upward.
The CD/DVD is automatically pulled in.
2. Open the start menu with the remote control.
3. Select "Photo".
4. Press the OK button.

Displaying overview

1. Select the subdirectory if necessary.
1. Select "Overview".

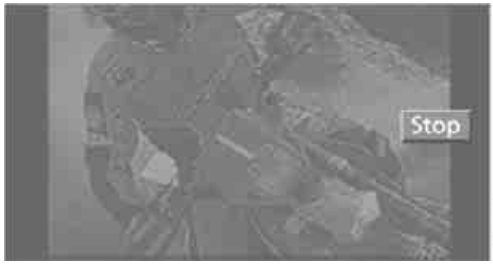


2. Press the OK button.
It may take some time until the overview is completely displayed.

▷ If a symbol is shown instead of an image, the image cannot be shown in the overview.◀

Displaying images

1. Select an image with the buttons of the remote control.
2. Press the OK button.



3. Select type of display:
   ▷ Scroll with the menu guidance buttons of the remote control.
   ▷ Show slide show:
   Turn the knurled wheel to set the display time of the images.
   Stop slide show:
   Select "Stop".

Adjusting

1. Press the OK button.

CarManuals2.com

2. Select a menu item:

	Function
↩	Return to the Photo menu
"SET"	Set the "Screen brightness" of the screen. "Languages": the language of the system can be set after changing to the top field.
▶	Start slide show
⏮ ⏭	Show first/last image
↻	Rotate image by 90°
"Overview"	Change to image overview

3. Press the OK button.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Ending display

1. Press the button.
2. Select the symbol.
3. Press the button.

Ejecting CD/DVD

Press the button on the CD/DVD player.

Information on CD/DVD player

Safety notes

The BMW CD/DVD player is a Class 1 laser product. Do not operate if the cover is damaged, otherwise severe eye damage can result.◀

Suitable media

Do not use self-recorded CDs/DVDs with labels applied as these can become detached during playback due to heat build-up and can cause irreparable damage to the device.
Only use round CDs/DVDs with a standard diameter of 4.7 in/12 cm.
Never play CDs/DVDs with adapters, e.g. single-CDs, as otherwise the CDs or the adapter can jam and may not be ejected.
Never use combined CD/DVD, e.g. DVD^{Plus} or hybrid disks, as otherwise the CD/DVD can jam and may not be ejected.◀

CarManuals2.com

The CD/DVD player can play the following media:

- Video DVD
- CD-DA (Audio CD)
- CDs/DVDs with compressed image files
- CDs/DVDs with compressed audio files
- CDs/DVDs with compressed video files

DVD Audio is not supported by the DVD player. However, many audio DVDs available in stores also contain a video track in the DVD Video format in addition to the audio track. These DVDs can be played back by the DVD player. Please refer to the information on your DVD to determine whether your audio DVD contains an additional video track. Depending on the authoring used, it is possible that not all functions are available during playback.

Dual-sided DVDs available from retail suppliers are coated on both sides and bear no markings. This means both sides are information carriers. To play the information on the other side, turn over the DVD.

Supported formats

Depending on the compression method used, not all files of the specified formats can be opened

Images

JPEG/JPG

With very large image files, it may take a longer time until the images are shown.

Compressed audio files

- MP3
- WMA
- OGG
- AAC

Compressed video files

- VCD
- SVCD
- MPEG1
- MPEG2
- MPEG4/DivX

Digital Rights Management DRM

It may not be possible to play CDs/CVDs with integrated Digital Rights Management.

General malfunctions

The BMW CD/DVD player is optimized for operation in the vehicle. It may react more sensitively to defective CDs/DVDs than devices intended for stationary use.

If a CD/DVD cannot be played, first check whether it has been inserted correctly.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Make sure that no foreign bodies or liquids enter the CD-/DVD slot, as otherwise the CD/DVD player will be damaged.◀

Humidity

High levels of humidity can lead to condensation on the CD/DVD or the laser's scan lens and temporarily prevent playback.

Malfunctions with individual CDs/DVDs

If malfunctions occur only with particular CDs/DVDs, this can be due to one of the following causes.

Copied or self-recorded CDs/DVDs

Possible reasons for malfunctions with copied or self-recorded CDs/DVDs are, e.g., inconsistent data-creation or recording processes, or poor quality or high age of the CD/DVD blank.

Only label CDs/DVDs on the side with the label using a pen intended for this purpose.

Damaged CDs/DVDs

Avoid fingerprints, dust, scratches and moisture.

CarManuals2.com

Store CDs/DVDs in a sleeve.

Do not subject CDs/DVDs to temperatures over 122 °F /50 °C, high levels of humidity or direct sunlight.

CDs/DVDs with copy protection

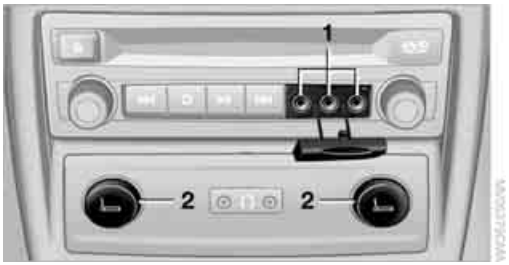
CDs/DVDs are often provided with a copy protection feature by the manufacturer. This can mean that some CDs/DVDs cannot be played or can only be played to a limited extent.

Care instructions

You can find everything you need to know on this topic by consulting the separate Caring for your vehicle brochure.

External device

Connecting



1 Connections for audio/video cables:
Watch the colors of the sockets when connecting.
Yellow socket: video
White socket: audio left
Red socket: audio right

2 Power supply for external device: sockets with removable cap, also refer to page 115

Playback

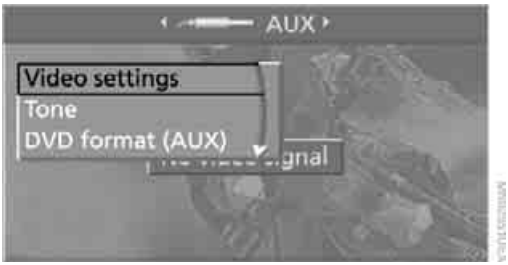
1. Switch on the external device and start the playback.
2. Open the start menu with the remote control.
3. Select "AUX".
4. Press the OK button.

For devices without a video signal, e.g. MP3 players, "No video signal" is shown. The sound is nevertheless played.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Settings for external devices

1. Press the OK button during playback.



2. Make the settings with the remote control:

▷ "Video settings":

  ▷ "Brightness", "Color" and "Contrast" of video playback.

  ▷ "NTSC color":
  The color can be adjusted on an external device with the NTSC standard.

  ▷ "Standard":
  The DVD system in the rear can be adapted to external devices with various TV standards. When doing so, also refer to the operating manual of the external device.

  ▷ "Reset":
  The settings are reset to the default value.

▷ "Tone":

  ▷ "Treble / Bass" and "Balance" can be adjusted for the left and right-hand headphones and the infrared head-phones.

  ▷ "Reset":
  Your settings are reset.

  ▷ Additional settings can be made after changing to the top field.
  "Audio": the volume of the external device can be adjusted to the volume of the CD/DVD player.
  "Languages": system language of the DVD system in the rear.
  "Screen brightness": background brightness of screen

▷ "DVD format (AUX)":

  ▷ "Standard"

  ▷ "Zoom": full-screen playback

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Communications

This chapter summarizes how to operate your mobile phone using iDrive or voice control and how to use BMW Assist or TeleService.

CarManuals2.com

Telephoning*

The concept

Your BMW is equipped with a full mobile phone preparation package. After logging on a suitable mobile phone on the vehicle once, you can operate the mobile phone via iDrive, with the buttons on the steering wheel and by voice.

A mobile phone that has been logged on once is automatically detected again with the engine running or the ignition switched on as soon as it is in the vehicle interior. The logon data of up to four mobile phones can be stored simultaneously. If several mobile phones are detected simultaneously, the respective last mobile phone logged on can be operated via the vehicle.

Using a phone in your vehicle

Using snap-in adapter*

The so-called snap-in adapter, a mobile phone cradle, enables the battery to be charged and the mobile phone to be connected to the external antenna of your vehicle. This ensures improved network reception and a consistent voice reproduction quality. Ask your BMW Sports Activity Vehicle Center which mobile phones snap-in adapters are offered for.

⚠ BMW discourages the use of mobile phones or other mobile communications devices inside the vehicle without a direct connection to an outside antenna. Otherwise, the vehicle electronics and mobile communication device can influence one another. In addition, there is no assurance that the radiation which results from transmission will be dissipated from the vehicle interior.◀

Avoid operating a mobile phone detected by the vehicle with the keypad of the mobile phone, otherwise malfunctions can occur.

For your safety

A car phone makes life more convenient in many ways, and can even save lives in an emergency. While you should consult your mobile phone's separate operating instructions for a detailed description of safety precautions and information, we request that you direct your particular attention to the following:

⚠ Only make entries when the traffic situation allows you to do so. Do not hold the mobile phone in your hand while you are driving; use the hands-free system instead. If you do not observe this precaution, your being distracted can endanger vehicle occupants and other road users.◀

Suitable mobile phones

Ask your BMW Sports Activity Vehicle Center which mobile phones with a Bluetooth interface are supported by the mobile phone preparation package or which mobile phones snap-in adapters are available for. These mobile phones support the functions described in this Owner's Manual with a certain software version. Malfunctions can occur with other mobile phones.

Care instructions

You can find what you need to know about caring for your mobile phone in the Caring for your vehicle brochure and in the separate mobile phone operating instructions.

Operating options

You can operate the mobile phone using:

- ▷ Buttons on steering wheel, refer to page 11
- ▷ iDrive, refer to page 192
- ▷ Voice commands, refer to page 197

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

▷ Programmable memory/direct selection buttons, refer to page 21

Phoning with the BMW Assist system*: BMW Assist calls

You can use the BMW Assist system via the hands-free unit for BMW Assist calls.

When the status information "Communication" or "BMW Assist" is displayed in "BMW Service", only BMW Assist calls are possible.

It may not be possible to establish a telephone connection using the mobile phone while a connection is being established to BMW Assist or while a call to BMW Assist is already in progress. If this happens, you must log off the mobile phone from the vehicle if you wish to place a call with the mobile phone.

Commissioning

Logging on mobile phone on vehicle

The following prerequisites must be met:

▷ Suitable mobile phone: the mobile phone is supported by the full mobile phone preparation package.

▷ The mobile phone is ready to operate.

▷ The Bluetooth link on the vehicle, refer to page 192, and on the mobile phone is active.

▷ Depending on the mobile phone, presettings on the mobile phone are necessary, e.g. via the menu item Bluetooth activated or the menu item Connection not with confirmation.

▷ Depending on the mobile phone model, the setting energy saving mode can, for example, result in vehicle failing to detect the logged-on mobile phone.

▷ For logging on, specify any desired number as the Bluetooth passkey, e.g. 1. This Bluetooth passkey is no longer required following successful logon.

▷ The ignition is switched on.

⚠ Only log on the mobile phone with the vehicle stopped, otherwise the passengers and other road users can be endangered due to a lack of attentiveness on the part of the driver.◀

Switching on ignition

1. Insert the remote control as far as possible into the ignition lock.
2. Switch on the ignition by pressing the Start/Stop button without depressing the brake pedal.

Preparation via iDrive

iDrive, for explanation of concept, refer to page 16.

3. Press the **MENU** button to open the start menu.

4. Press the controller to open the i menu.
5. Select "Settings" and press the controller.

6. Select "Bluetooth" and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

7. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Bluetooth" is selected and press the controller.

8. Select "Phone" and press the controller.

Preparation with mobile phone

9. Additional operations must be carried out on the mobile phone and differ depending on the model, refer to the operating instructions of your mobile phone, e.g. find, connect or link under Bluetooth device.

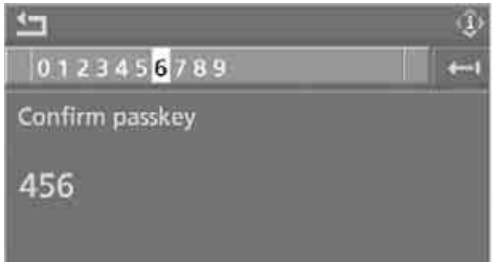
Logging on

Depending on your mobile phone, you will first be requested consecutively via the display of your mobile phone or the Control Display to enter the Bluetooth passkey you specified.

Display on the Control Display if the Bluetooth passkey can be entered via iDrive:

10. Select "Add device" and press the controller.

11. Enter the Bluetooth passkey.
Depending on the mobile phone, approx. 30 seconds are available for entering the Bluetooth passkey on the mobile phone and on the Control Display.



12. Select "Confirm passkey" and press the controller.

13. Wait a few seconds until the list of the logged-on mobile phones is shown on the Control Display and "Phone" is selected.

To cancel the logon of the mobile phone on the vehicle:
Select "Refuse connection" and press the controller.

The next time you use the mobile phone in the vehicle interior, it will be detected within a maximum of 2 minutes with the engine running or the ignition switched on.

As soon as a mobile phone is detected by the vehicle, the phone book entries stored on the SIM card or on your mobile phone are transmitted to your vehicle, refer to the operating instructions of your mobile phone if necessary. This transfer is dependent on your mobile phone, refer to the operating instructions of

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

your mobile phone if necessary, and can take several minutes.

Up to four mobile phones can be logged on consecutively. If you log on a fifth mobile phone, the logon data of the last mobile phone in the list will be deleted, refer to below.

List of logged-on mobile phones

All mobile phones for which the vehicle has stored the logon data can be displayed. If several logged-on mobile phones are detected by the vehicle simultaneously, you can operate the mobile phone highest up in the list via the vehicle.

You can change the order of the mobile phones in the list. As long as a mobile phone is selected in this list, the mobile phones cannot be operated via the vehicle.

iDrive, for explanation of concept, refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button to open the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Bluetooth" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Bluetooth" is selected and press the controller.
6. Select "Phone" and press the controller.
7. Select the desired mobile phone and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

8. Select "Move device up" and press the controller.

The selected mobile phone is moved upward by one position.

Logging mobile phone off vehicle

If you no longer want to operate your mobile phone via the vehicle, you can delete the logon data of the mobile phone.

iDrive, for explanation of concept, refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button to open the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Bluetooth" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Bluetooth" is selected and press the controller.
6. Select "Phone" and press the controller.
7. Select the desired mobile phone and press the controller.

8. Select "Delete device" and press the controller.
   The logged-off mobile phone is deleted from the list.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

The phone book entries you have transferred from your mobile phone to your vehicle are also deleted in the process.

Activating/deactivating Bluetooth link

Bluetooth technology is not approved in all countries. Observe the applicable local regulations. Temporarily disconnect the Bluetooth link between the vehicle and the mobile phone if necessary.◀

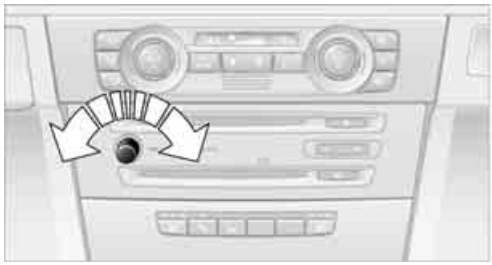
If the Bluetooth link is deactivated, you cannot operate your mobile phone via the vehicle and other devices with a Bluetooth interface can be used via the mobile phone, e.g. a laptop computer.

To temporarily deactivate the Bluetooth link between your vehicle and your mobile phone:

1. Remove the mobile phone from the snap-in adapter and switch it off.
2. Press the **MENU** button to open the start menu.
3. Press the controller to open the i menu.
4. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
5. Select "Bluetooth" and press the controller.
6. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Bluetooth" is selected and press the controller.

7. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
   The Bluetooth link is activated.
8. Select "Bluetooth communication active" and press the controller to activate or deactivate the link.

Adjusting volume



Turn the knob during a call to select the desired volume.

This volume for the hands-free system is maintained, even if the other audio sources are set to minimum volume.

You can also adjust the volume with buttons on the steering wheel, refer to page 10.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Operation via iDrive

You can operate the following functions via iDrive:

- Accepting a call
- Dialing phone numbers
- Dialing phone numbers from the phone book
- Dialing stored phone numbers, e.g. from the list of accepted calls

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

▷ Ending a call

When the ignition and radio readiness are switched off, e.g. after removing the remote control from the ignition lock, you can continue an ongoing call via the hands-free system for no more than 25 minutes.

Speech quality

If the person you are talking to cannot understand you well, this may be due to excessively loud background noises. The full mobile phone preparation package can compensate for these noises to a certain degree. To optimize the speech quality during a call, we recommend that you:

▷ Reduce background noises, e.g. by closing the windows, reducing the air volume of the automatic climate control or pointing the front air vents downward

▷ Reduce the volume of the hands-free system.

Requirements

The logon data of the mobile phone are stored in the vehicle and the mobile phone is ready to operate.

The engine is running or the ignition is switched on.

The mobile phone is detected by the vehicle.

iDrive, for explanation of concept, refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.

This opens the start menu.

2. Move the controller forward to open "Communication".

CarManuals2.com

Receiving calls

If you have the phone number of the caller stored in the phone book and the phone number has been transmitted, the name of the entry is displayed.

Accepting a call

Select "Accept" and press the controller.

Rejecting a call

Select "Reject" and press the controller.
The caller is diverted to your mailbox if it has been activated.

Calling

Dialing phone numbers

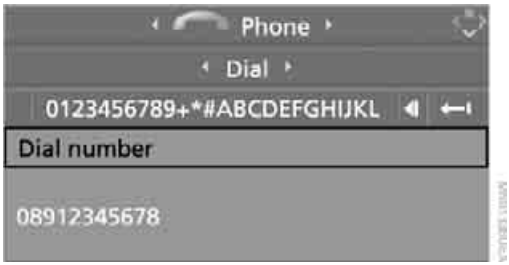
1. Select "Phone" and press the controller.

2. Select "Dial" and press the controller.
3. Enter the desired phone number by dialing the individual digits and pressing the controller.
   Always enter the complete phone number consisting of national dialing code, area code, and phone number.
   The letters correspond to the digits on the keypad of the mobile phone.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

To delete an incorrect character:
Move the controller toward the right to select ⟵ and press the controller.

4. Select "Dial number" and press the controller.



For your phone number to be displayed to the person you are calling, the display of phone numbers must be enabled by your service provider.

Calling with programmable memory/ direct selection buttons

You can store phone numbers on the programmable memory/direct selection buttons to call them directly, refer to page 21.

Ending call

1. Select the phone number and press the controller.

2. Select "End call" and press the controller.

Dialing a phone number from phone book or a phone number stored in a list

Phone numbers you have called, incoming calls and the entries of the phone book are stored in lists when the mobile phone is connected to the vehicle via Bluetooth. If the caller is entered in the phone book, the name of the entry is displayed instead of the phone number.

You can select the desired subscriber from the list and establish the connection.

Five lists are available:

- "A - Z"
  The entries of the mobile-phone phone book, consisting of the name and phone number, are sorted alphabetically.
- "Top 8"
  The eight numbers called most frequently from the phone book "A - Z" are automatically stored in the Top 8 list. The list is sorted according to frequency.
- "Redial"
  The last eight phone numbers you have dialed are automatically stored. The last number dialed is at the top of the list.
- "Missed calls"
  The phone numbers of the last eight calls which were not accepted are stored. This requires the telephone number of the caller to have been sent.
- "Received calls"
  The phone numbers of the last eight accepted calls are stored. This requires the telephone number of the caller to have been sent.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Dialing phone numbers from phone book

The list "A - Z" is available for your phone book entries. The phone book entries appear on the Control Display.

1. Select "Phone" and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

2. Select "A - Z" and press the controller.
3. Select the first letters of the desired entry and press the controller.
4. Select the desired entry and press the controller.

5. Select "Call" and press the controller.
   The system dials the number.

If different phone numbers are stored in the mobile phone under one name, e.g. office and home, the name is shown once for each phone number.

You can change a phone number stored in the phone book, e.g. to call a specific extension:

1. Select "Phone" and press the controller.
2. Select "A - Z" and press the controller.
3. Select the desired entry and press the controller.
4. Select "Add digits" and press the controller.
5. Change the phone number.
6. Select "Dial number" and press the controller.

Dialing phone numbers stored in a list

To select an entry and establish a connection:

1. Select "Phone" and press the controller.
2. Select list and press the controller:
   - ▷ "Top 8"
   - ▷ "Redial"
   - ▷ "Missed calls"
   - ▷ "Received calls"

3. Select the desired entry and press the controller.

4. Select "Call" and press the controller.
   The system dials the number.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Deleting individual entries

1. Select the desired entry from the list and press the controller.
2. Select "Delete" and press the controller. The entry is deleted.

Deleting entire list

1. Select an entry from the list and press the controller.
2. Select "Delete all numbers" and press the controller.

3. Select "Yes" and press the controller. The list is deleted.

BMW Contact*

If BMW Assist is not enabled, you can display several service phone numbers:

- ▷ Roadside Assistance* of the BMW Group when you require breakdown assistance
- ▷ BMW Sports Activity Vehicle Center, e.g. when you want to make an appointment for service
- ▷ BMW Hotline* for information on all aspects of your vehicle

You can select the displayed service phone numbers if your mobile phone is logged on in the vehicle.

iDrive, for explanation of concept, refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button. This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller forward to select "Communication".
3. Select "BMW Contact" and press the controller.

4. Select "BMW Contact Numbers" and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

5. Select one of the following menu items and press the controller:
   - ▷ "Roadside Assistance"
   - ▷ "Customer Relations"
   - ▷ "Service Request"
6. Select "Call" and press the controller.

Contact is established.

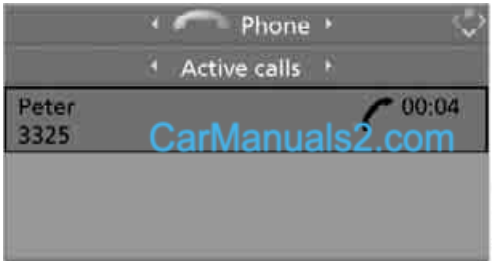
Transferring phone number via tone dialing method

The tone dialing method is required for access to network services or for controlling devices, e.g. remote checking of an answering machine.

This function is available when a connection has been established.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

1. Establish connection.



2. With single drive:
   Press the controller.
   Select "Keypad" and press the controller.
   With two drives:
   Move the controller backwards until the bottom field is selected.
3. Select the desired character and press the controller.
   Each character is sent immediately and confirmed by a tone depending on the mobile phone model.

Changing between mobile phone and hands-free system

From mobile phone to handsfree system

You can continue calls begun outside the Bluetooth range of the vehicle via the handsfree system when the engine is running or the ignition is switched on. Depending on your mobile phone, the system automatically switches over to the handsfree mode.

For mobile phones that do not automatically switch over to the handsfree mode:

▷ Depending on the mobile phone model used, the conversation can also be continued via the handsfree system if necessary. Act according to what is shown on the mobile phone display, refer to the operating instructions of your mobile phone.

▷ Press the button above the storage compartment. Switching over may take several seconds.

From handsfree system to mobile phone

When you telephone via the handsfree system, you can also continue the call via the mobile phone if necessary, depending on the mobile phone model. Act according to what is shown on the mobile phone display, refer to the operating instructions of your mobile phone.

Depending on your mobile phone model, poor reception of the wireless communications network can result in the system changing from the hands-free system to the mobile phone.

Operation by voice*

The concept

You can operate your mobile phone without having to remove your hands from the steering wheel. When making your entries, you will be supported by announcements and questions in many cases.

The same prerequisites as for operation via iDrive apply, refer to page 192.

Symbols in Owner's Manual

›...‹ Say the specified commands word for word.
››...‹‹ Indicates responses of the system.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Voice commands

Activating system

1. Briefly press the button on the steering wheel.

   An acoustic signal indicates that you can say commands.

2. Say the command.
   The text or numbers that the voice command system has registered will appear on the Control Display.

Ending/canceling operation by voice

Briefly press the button on the steering wheel
or

›Cancel‹.

In dialogs where text is spoken, not a command, e.g. a name, canceling is only possible using the button on the steering wheel.

Having possible commands read aloud

The system understands default commands that must be spoken word for word.
You can have the possible commands spoken by the system at any point:

›Help‹

Using alternative commands

There are often a number of commands to run a function, e.g.:

›Dial name‹ or ›Name‹.

The system recognizes digits from zero to nine.

You can say each digit individually or group them into a sequence to accelerate the input.

Example: dialing phone numbers

To start the dialog:

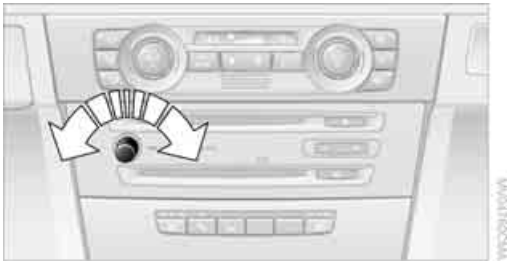
Press the button on the steering wheel.

Command	Response
›Dial number‹	››Please say the number‹‹
e.g. ›123 456 7890‹	Depending on equipment: ››123 456 7890. Continue?‹‹ or ››123 456 7890. And next?‹‹
›Dial‹	››Dialing number‹‹

CarManuals2.com

Adjusting volume

You can adjust the volume for the instructions from the system:



Turn the knob during an instruction to select the desired volume.

This volume for the instructions is maintained, even if the other audio sources are set to minimum volume.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Calling

Dialing phone numbers

1. ›Dial number‹.
   The dialog for establishing a telephone connection is opened.
2. Say the phone number.
   For telephone calls abroad, say ›Plus‹ and then the country code.
3. ›Dial‹.
   The connection to the desired subscriber is established.

Correcting phone number

After the last spoken sequence of digits has been repeated by the system, you can delete this sequence of digits.

›Correct number‹.
The digits are deleted.

The command ›Correct number‹ can be repeated as often as you like.

Deleting input

›Delete‹ is used to delete all the digits entered so far.

Voice phone book

Operating by voice command requires a personal voice phone book.

- With combined drives for audio CDs and navigation DVDs, the entries are automatically applied from your mobile phone's memory.
- With a single drive, the entries must be entered by voice and are independent of your mobile phone's memory. In this case, it is not possible to use voice command either to call phone numbers stored in the mobile phone or to store new numbers.

CarManuals2.com

Creating and editing voice phone book*

Store entry:

An entry always consists of a name and phone number.

1. ›Save name‹.
   The dialog for storing a name is opened.
2. Speak the name and repeat entry upon request.
   The spoken length of the names in the phone book must not exceed approx. 2 seconds.
3. Say the phone number when prompted.
4. To store the phone number:
   ›Save‹.

Delete entry:

You can delete any entry from the voice phone book.

1. ›Delete name‹.
   The dialog for deleting an entry is opened.
2. Say the name when prompted.
3. Confirm the prompt with ›Yes‹.

Delete all entries:

›Delete phone book‹ deletes all entries in the phone book.

1. ›Delete phone book‹.
   The dialog for deleting phone book is opened.
2. Confirm the prompt with ›Yes‹.
3. Confirm the repeated prompt with ›Yes‹.

Have entries read aloud and select:

You can have all the entries of your voice phone book read aloud in the order of input and select a certain entry to establish a connection:

1. ›Read phone book‹.
   The dialog for reading phone book is opened.
2. ›Dial number‹ when the desired entry is read aloud.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Selecting an entry

The connection to the phone number of the selected entry is established.

1. ›Dial name‹.
   The dialog for selecting an entry is opened.
2. Say the name when prompted.
3. Confirm the prompt with ›Yes‹.

Redialing

The ›Redial‹ command opens "Redial".

Notes

The commands in English were available as of this printing. Other languages are currently not available. To operate the mobile phone via the voice command system, refer to page 23.◀

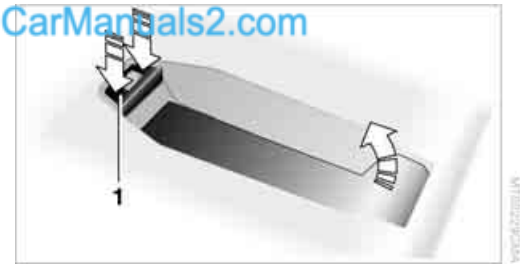
Important for voice commands

For voice commands, keep the following in mind:

- Issue the commands smoothly and at normal volume, avoiding excessive emphases and pauses.
- Keep the doors, windows and glass sunroof closed to prevent interference from ambient noise.
- Avoid making other noise in the vehicle while speaking.

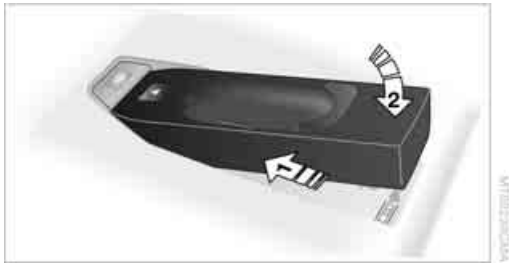
Mounting/removing snap-in adapter

1. Press the area **1** around the button and remove the cover.

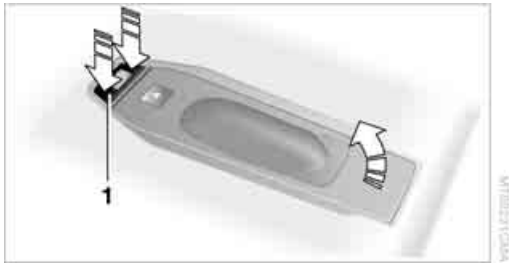


CarManuals2.com

2. Insert the snap-in adapter at the front and press down until it engages.



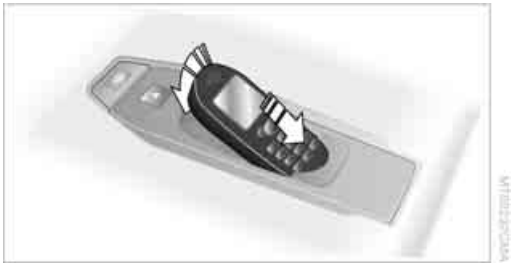
To remove the snap-in adapter:
Press the area **1** around the button.



Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Inserting mobile phone

1. Remove the protective cap from the mobile phone's antenna connector if necessary, so that the mobile phone can engage in the snap-in adapter.
2. Push the mobile phone with the buttons facing upward toward the electrical connections and press down until it engages.

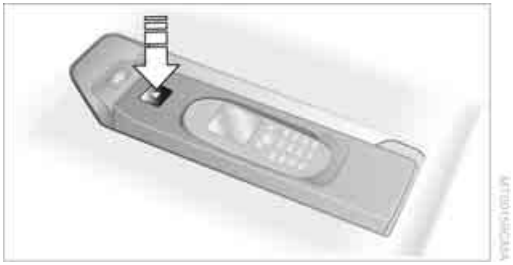


The mobile phone battery is charged from the radio readiness position.

▷ To protect the vehicle's batteries, avoid using the phone when the ignition is switched off.◀

Removing mobile phone

CarManuals2.com



Press the button.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

BMW Assist*

BMW Assist provides you with various services. For example, the position data of your vehicle can be transferred to the BMW Assist Response Center if an emergency call* has been initiated.

Many BMW Assist services depend on the individually agreed contract.

After your contract has expired, the BMW Assist system will be deactivated by the BMW Assist Response Center without you having to visit a BMW Sports Activity Vehicle Center. Following the deactivation of the BMW Assist system, no BMW Assist service is available. The BMW Assist system be reactivated by a BMW Sports Activity Vehicle Center after signing a new contract.

Requirements

If the following requirements are met, you can use BMW Assist:

- The installed BMW Assist system is logged in on a wireless communications network. This network must be capable of transmitting the services.
- To transmit position data, the vehicle must be able to determine the current position.
- For BMW Assist to be activated and updated, the GPS signal must be available.
- You have signed the BMW Assist contract of participation at a BMW Sports Activity Vehicle Center or BMW Assist Response Center. Enabling must have been completed.
- BMW Assist is activated, refer to page 207.

Services offered

Carmanuals2.com

The following services are available via BMW Assist:

- Emergency calls, refer to page 236:
  When you press the SOS button, a connection is established to the BMW Assist Response Center. The BMW Assist Response Center contacts you and arranges for further steps to help you.
- Automatic emergency call:
  Under certain conditions, a connection is established to the BMW Assist Response Center after a serious accident. If possible, the BMW Assist Response Center then contacts you and takes further steps to help you.
- Roadside Assistance:
  You can call Roadside Assistance* of the BMW Group should you require help in the event of a breakdown. If possible, the vehicle and position data are transmitted in the process.
- BMW Hotline:
  For information on all aspects of your vehicle, you can be connected to the BMW Hotline.
- TeleService:
  Data on your vehicle's service status or necessary inspections are transmitted to your BMW Sports Activity Vehicle Center either automatically before a service due date or when you request a BMW service appointment.
- Unlocking vehicle:
  Inform the BMW Assist Response Center, e.g. if your remote control is not available and you want to have the vehicle unlocked.
- Vehicle search:
  After your vehicle has been reported to the police as stolen, the BMW Assist Response Center can locate its position.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

In addition, you can be provided with other services, e.g. the information service or information on route planning, the traffic situation and the weather.
Press the SOS button to contact the BMW Assist Response Center, see below.

You also have access to the BMW Assist information service via the Internet.

Special aspects of the services offered

The following special aspects apply to the services:

- ▷ The services offered are country-specific.
- ▷ Voice contact is established or data are transferred, depending on the equipment and the country. In some countries, it is possible to do both.
- ▷ The data transferred can, for example, be the vehicle data, your current position or the data of the CBS Condition Based Service.

Using services

Contact to the BMW Assist Response Center

You can contact the BMW Assist Response Center with the SOS button.

1. Briefly press protective cover to open.
   Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the arrangement of the switches and indicator lamps may differ somewhat.

2. Press the button for at least 2 seconds.

The BMW Assist Response Center is contacted.

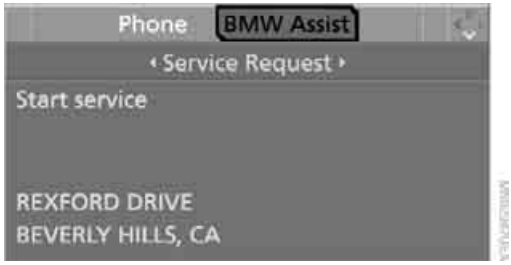
CarManuals2.com

Breakdown assistance

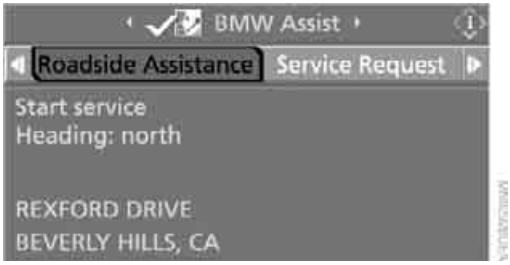
iDrive, for explanation of concept, refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.

2. Move the controller forward to select "Communication".
3. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "BMW Assist" is selected and press the controller.



4. Select "Roadside Assistance" and press the controller.



If the current position can be determined, the current vehicle location is displayed.

5. Select "Start service" and press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

The BMW Assist Response Center will connect you to the Roadside Assistance of the BMW Group.

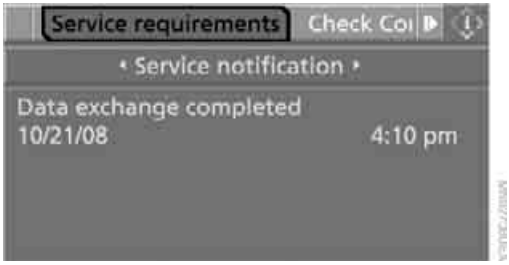
TeleService

Automatic service notification*

The data on the service status of your vehicle or on necessary inspections is transmitted automatically directly to your BMW Sports Activity Vehicle Center prior to the due date. You can check when the BMW Sports Activity Vehicle Center was notified.

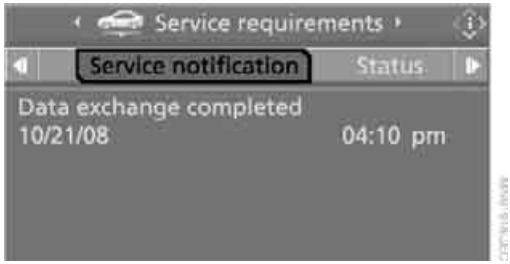
1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Info sources" and press the controller.

4. Select "Service" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Service requirements" is selected and press the controller.



CarManuals2.com

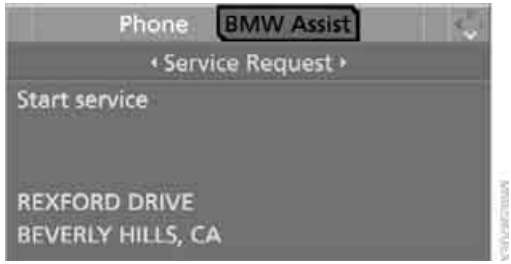
6. Select "Service notification" and press the controller.



Manual service notification

You can transmit data on the maintenance state of your vehicle to your BMW Sports Activity Vehicle Center if you want to make an appointment for service.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller forward to select "Communication".
3. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "BMW Assist" is selected and press the controller.



4. Select "Service Request"

5. Press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

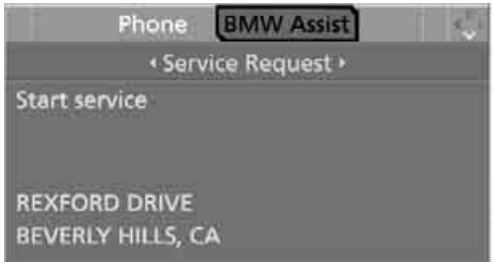
6. Select "Start service" and press the controller.

The data relevant for service are transmitted. Your BMW Sports Activity Vehicle Center will contact you to set up an appointment for service.

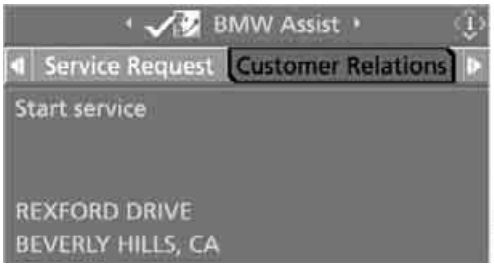
Contacting BMW Hotline

For information on all aspects of your vehicle, you can contact the BMW Hotline.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller forward to select "Communication".
3. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "BMW Assist" is selected and press the controller.



4. Select "Customer Relations".



5. Press the controller.
6. Select "Start service" and press the controller.

You are connected to the BMW Hotline by the BMW Assist Response Center.

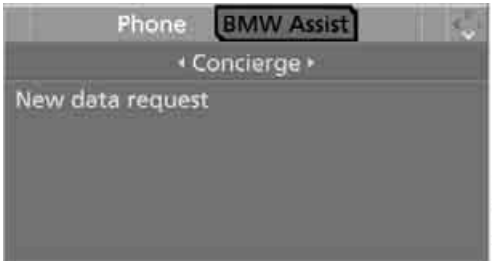
Information service*

When you call the information service of BMW Assist, you can, for example, obtain information on current events, filling stations or hotels and have their phone numbers and addresses transferred. Reservations can be made at many hotels directly by the BMW Information Service.

The information service must be enabled separately by the BMW Assist Response Center.

Calling up information

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller forward to select "Communication".
3. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "BMW Assist" is selected and press the controller.



4. Select "Concierge" and press the controller.

5. Select "New data request" and press the controller.

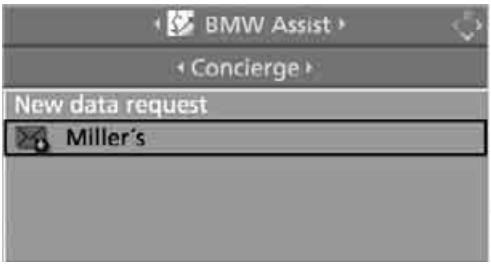
The BMW Assist Response Center will connect you to the information service.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Displaying transferred data

Select the received message if necessary and press the controller.



Dialing phone number or applying address in destination guidance

1. Select "Options" and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

2. Select a menu item:

▷ With "Call" you can establish a telephone connection. This requires your Bluetooth mobile phone to be logged on in the vehicle.

▷ With "Select as destination" you can apply the address in the destination guidance of the navigation system.

Customizing BMW Assist

Displaying and updating services

You will be notified of any changes in the services offered by BMW Assist. In this case you should update the services.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Turn the controller until "Settings" is selected and press the controller.

4. Turn the controller until "BMW Services" is selected and press the controller.

5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Service Status" is selected and press the controller.
   The current services of BMW Assist are displayed.
6. Select "Options" and press the controller.

7. Select "Update services" and press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

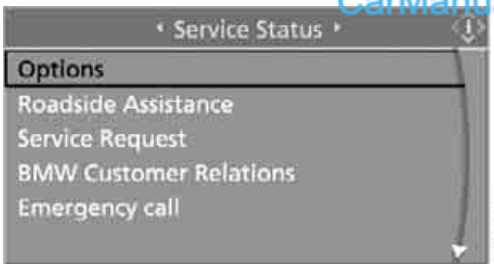
Blocking services*

If you block the services, the connection to BMW Assist is deactivated.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Turn the controller until "Settings" is selected and press the controller.
4. Turn the controller until "BMW Services" is selected and press the controller.

5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Service Status" is selected and press the controller.
6. Select "Options" and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com



7. Select "Terminate services" and press the controller.

The use of BMW Assist is blocked, and the current vehicle position will not be transferred during an emergency call*. To cancel the blocking, and reactivate BMW Assist, see below. This does not affect the contractual agreements.

Reactivate BMW Assist if necessary to re-enable.

Activating BMW Assist

For you to be able to use the services of BMW Assist, BMW Assist must be activated.

Requirements

▷ Make sure that the vehicle can determine its current position. Reception is best when you have an unobstructed view to the sky.

▷ Leave the ignition switched on while connecting to the system.

Activating

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.

2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Turn the controller until "Settings" is selected and press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

4. Turn the controller until "BMW Services" is selected and press the controller.

5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Service Status" is selected and press the controller.

6. Select "Enable services" and press the controller.
BMW Assist is activated and the data exchange with the BMW Assist Response Center begins.

Activation takes a few minutes. The status is displayed on the Control Display. If you open another menu, the activation process continues to run in the background.

Displaying vehicle data

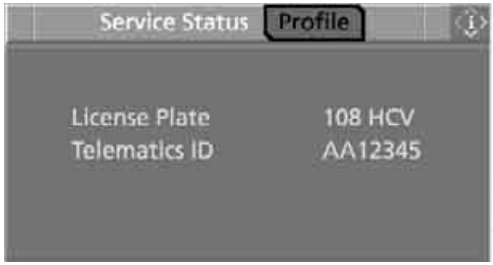
When BMW Assist is enabled, the license plate and the vehicle identification number of your vehicle can be displayed.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.

4. Select "BMW Services" and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Profile" is selected and press the controller.



Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Mobility

This section helps you maintain your mobility by supplying important information on vital topics including fuels and lubricants, wheels and tires, service, maintenance and breakdown assistance.

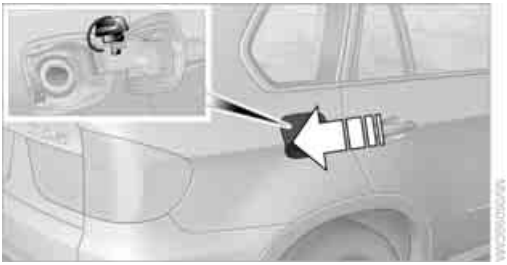
CarManuals2.com

Refueling

Switch off the engine before refueling. When handling fuel, always observe all applicable precautionary measures and regulations. Never transport reserve fuel containers in the vehicle. These could become leaky and cause an explosion or a fire in an accident.◀

Fuel filler door

Opening



1. Open the fuel filler door. To do this, briefly press the lower edge.
2. Turn the fuel filler cap counterclockwise.
3. Place the fuel filler cap in the bracket attached to the fuel filler door.

Closing

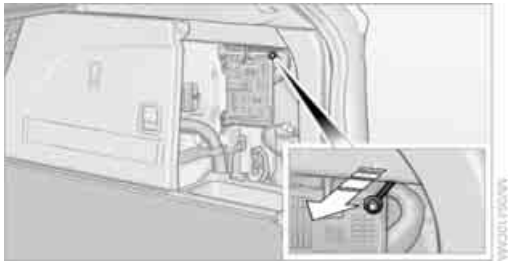
Fit the cap and turn it clockwise until you clearly hear a click.

Do not jam the strap attached to the fuel filler cap between the fuel filler cap and the vehicle. If the cap is loose or missing, a message* is displayed after a certain time.◀

Releasing manually

If an electrical malfunction should occur, you can unlock the fuel filler door manually.

1. Open the right-hand side panel in the cargo bay.
2. Pull the knob with the gas pump symbol.



Observe the following when refueling

When handling fuels always observe any safety guidelines posted at the service station.◀

When refueling, insert the filler nozzle completely into the filler pipe. Avoid raising the filler nozzle during refueling, otherwise this leads to

- ▷ premature pump shutoff
- ▷ a reduced efficiency of the fuel-vapor recovery system.

The fuel tank is full when the filler nozzle clicks off the first time.

Fuel tank capacity

- ▷ X5 3.0si:
  Approx. 22.5 US gal/85 liters, including the reserve capacity of approx. 2.1 US gal/8 liters.
- ▷ X5 4.8i:
  Approx. 22.5 US gal/85 liters, including the reserve capacity of approx. 2.6 US gal/10 liters.

CarManuals2.com

Refuel as soon as possible once your cruising range falls below 30 miles/ 50 km, otherwise engine functions are not ensured and damage can occur.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Fuel specifications

Do not use leaded gasoline, otherwise damage to the catalytic converter will result.
Do not use E85, i.e. fuel that consists of 85% ethanol, or Flex Fuel, otherwise permanent damage to the engine and the fuel supply system will result.◀

Required fuel

Super Premium Gasoline/AKI 91

This gasoline is highly recommended.

However, you may also use gasoline with less AKI. The minimum AKI Rating is 87.

If you use gasoline with this minimum AKI Rating, the engine may produce knocking sounds when starting at high outside temperatures. This has no affect on the engine life.

Do not use gasoline below the specified minimum quality, otherwise engine damage can result.◀

Use high-quality brands

CarManuals2.com

Field experience has indicated significant differences in fuel quality: volatility, composition, additives, etc., among gasolines offered for sale in the United States and Canada. Fuels containing up to and including 10% ethanol or other oxygenates with up to 2.8% oxygen by weight, that is, 15% MTBE or 3% methanol plus an equivalent amount of co-solvent, will not void the applicable warranties with respect to defects in materials or workmanship.

The use of poor-quality fuels may result in drivability, starting and stalling problems especially under certain environmental conditions such as high ambient temperature and high altitude.
Should you encounter drivability problems which you suspect could be related to the fuel you are using, we recommend that you respond by switching to a recognized high-quality brand such as gasoline that is advertised as Top Tier Detergent Gasoline.

Failure to comply with these recommendations may also result in unscheduled maintenance.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Wheels and tires

Tire inflation pressure

Information for your safety

The condition of the tires and the maintenance of the specified tire pressure are crucial not only to the tire's service life, but also to driving comfort and most importantly, driving safety.

Checking pressure

Only check tire inflation pressure when the tires are cold. This means after a maximum of 1.25 miles/2 km driving or when the vehicle has been parked for at least 2 hours. When tires are warm, the tire inflation pressure increases.

Check the tire inflation pressure regularly and correct it as needed, even on the compact tire*: at least twice a month and before starting long trips. If you fail to observe this precaution, you may be driving on tires with incorrect tire pressures, a condition that can not only compromise your vehicle's driving stability, but also lead to tire damage and the risk of an accident. Do not drive with depressurized, i.e. flat tires, except run-flat tires. A flat tire will seriously impair your vehicle's handling and braking response. Attempts to drive on a flat tire can lead to a loss of control over the vehicle.◀

After correcting the tire inflation pressure, reinitialize the Flat Tire Monitor, refer to page 87, or reset the Tire Pressure Monitor, refer to page 89.◀

Pressure specifications

The tables below provide all the correct inflation pressures for the specified tire sizes at ambient temperature.

The inflation pressures apply to the tire sizes and tire brands respectively approved and recommended by BMW; a list of these is available from your BMW Sports Activity Vehicle Center.◀

For correct identification of the right tire inflation pressure for your tires, observe the following:

CarManuals2.com

- Tire sizes of your vehicle
- Load conditions
- Maximum allowable driving speed

Tire inflation pressures for speeds up to 100 mph/160 km/h

For normal driving up to 100 mph/160 km/h, adjust pressures to the respective tire inflation pressures listed on the following pages in the column Traveling speeds up to max. of 100 mph/160 km/h to achieve optimum driving comfort.

These pressure specifications can be found on the door post when you open the driver's door.

The permissible top speed for these tire inflation pressures is 100 mph/160 km/h. Do not exceed this speed, otherwise tire damage and accidents may result.◀

Tire inflation pressures for speeds above 100 mph/160 km/h

In order to drive at maximum speeds in excess of 100 mph/160 km/h, please observe, and, if necessary, adjust tire pressures for speeds exceeding 100 mph/160 km/h from the relevant table on the following pages. Otherwise tire damage and accidents could occur.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Observe all national and local maximum speed limits, otherwise violations of the law could occur.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Tire inflation pressures for X5 3.0si/4.8i with two rows of seats

Tire size	Pressure specifications in psi/kPa					
	Traveling speeds up to a max. of 100 mph/160 km/h		Traveling speeds including those exceeding 100 mph/160 km/h			
All pressure specifications in the table are indicated in psi/ kilopascal with cold tires. Cold = ambient temperature						
Compact wheel*: T 155/90 D 18 113 M	61/420	61/420	61/420	61/420	61/420	61/420
without sport package:						
255/55 R 18 109 H M+S XL	32/220	32/220	32/220	32/220	32/220	36/250
255/50 R 19 107 H M+S XL	32/220	33/230	32/220	32/220	32/220	36/250
Front: 255/50 R 19 107 V XL	32/220	-	32/220	-	32/220	-
Rear: 285/45 R 19 111 V XL	-	32/220	-	32/220	-	32/220
Front: 275/40 R 20 106 W XL	32/220	-	32/220	-	32/220	-
Rear: 315/35 R 20 110 W XL	-	32/220	-	32/220	-	32/220
Front: 285/35 R 21 105 W XL	32/220	-	32/220	-	32/220	-
Rear: 325/30 R 21 108 W XL	-	32/220	-	32/220	-	33/230
with sport package:						
255/55 R 18 109 H M+S XL	32/220	32/220	32/220	32/220	32/220	36/250
255/50 R 19 107 H M+S XL	32/220	33/230	32/220	32/220	32/220	36/250
Front: 255/50 R 19 107 V XL	32/220	-	33/230	-	35/240	-
Rear: 285/45 R 19 111 V XL	-	32/220	-	33/230	-	36/250
Front: 275/40 R 20 106 W XL	32/220	-	32/220	-	33/230	-
Rear: 315/35 R 20 110 W XL	-	32/220	-	33/230	-	36/250
Front: 285/35 R 21 105 W XL	32/220	-	33/230	-	35/240	-
Rear: 325/30 R 21 108 W XL	-	32/220	-	33/230	-	38/260
More details on the permissible load and weights can be found on page 244.						

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Tire inflation pressures for X5 3.0si/4.8i with three rows of seats

Tire size	Pressure specifications in psi/kPa					
	Traveling speeds up to a max. of 100 mph/160 km/h		Traveling speeds including those exceeding 100 mph/160 km/h			
All pressure specifications in the table are indicated in psi/ kilopascal with cold tires. Cold = ambient temperature						
without sport package:						
255/55 R 18 109 H M+S XL	32/220	33/230	32/220	32/220	32/220	38/260
255/50 R 19 107 H M+S XL	32/220	36/250	32/220	35/240	33/230	41/280
Front: 255/50 R 19 107 V XL	32/220	-	32/220	-	33/230	-
Rear: 285/45 R 19 111 V XL	-	32/220	-	32/220	-	35/240
Front: 275/40 R 20 106 W XL	32/220	-	32/220	-	32/220	-
Rear: 315/35 R 20 110 W XL	-	32/220	-	32/220	-	35/240
Front: 285/35 R 21 105 W XL	32/220	-	32/220	-	32/220	-
Rear: 325/30 R 21 108 W XL	-	35/240	-	33/230	-	38/260
with sport package:						
255/55 R 18 109 H M+S XL	32/220	33/230	32/220	32/220	32/220	38/260
255/50 R 19 107 H M+S XL	32/220	36/250	32/220	35/240	33/230	41/280
Front: 255/50 R 19 107 V XL	32/220	-	33/230	-	35/240	-
Rear: 285/45 R 19 111 V XL	-	32/220	-	35/240	-	41/280
Front: 275/40 R 20 106 W XL	32/220	-	32/220	-	33/230	-
Rear: 315/35 R 20 110 W XL	-	32/220	-	35/240	-	41/280
Front: 285/35 R 21 105 W XL	32/220	-	33/230	-	35/240	-
Rear: 325/30 R 21 108 W XL	-	35/240	-	36/250	-	42/290

More details on the permissible load and weights can be found on page 244.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Tire identification marks

Knowledge of the labeling on the side of the tire makes it easier to identify and choose the right tires.

Tire size

CarManuals2.com

e.g. 255/55 R 18 109 H

Nominal width in mm
Aspect ratio in %
Belted construction – radial
Rim diameter in inches
Carrying capacity ID-code (not in ZR tires)
Speed code letter (in ZR tires before the R)

Speed letter

Q = up to 100 mph/160 km/h

T = up to 118 mph/190 km/h

H = up to 131 mph/210 km/h

V = up to 150 mph/240 km/h

W = up to 167 mph/270 km/h

Y = up to 186 mph/300 km/h

Tire Identification Number

Tires with DOT codes meet the guidelines of the US Department of Transportation.

DOT code:

e.g. DOT xxxx xxx 0806

Manufacturer code for tire make
Tire size and tire design
Tire age

Tire age

The manufacturing date of tires is contained in the tire coding: DOT ... 0307 indicates that the tire was manufactured in week 3 of 2007.

BMW recommends that you replace all tires after 6 years at most, even if some tires may last for 10 years.

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width. For example:

Tread wear 200 Traction AA
Temperature A

DOT Quality Grades

Tread wear
Traction AA A B C
Temperature A B C

All passenger car tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.◀

Tread wear

The tread wear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half (1 ½) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C.
Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Temperature

The temperature grades are A, the highest, B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

CarManuals2.com

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.◀

RSC – run-flat tires

You will recognize run-flat tires by a circular symbol containing the letters RSC on the side of the tire, refer to page 220.

M+S

Winter and all-season tires.
These have better winter properties than summer tires.

XL

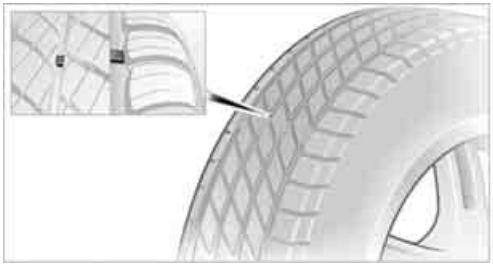
Indicates specially reinforced tires.

Tire condition

Inspect your tires frequently for tread wear, signs of damage and for foreign objects lodged in the tread. Check the tread depth.

Minimum tread depth

The tread depth should not drop below 0.12 in/3 mm, although, for example, European legislation only specifies a minimum tread depth of 0.063 in/1.6 mm. At tread depths below 0.12 in/3 mm there is an increased risk of high-speed hydroplaning, even when only small amounts of water are present on the road surface.
When winter tires wear down past a tread depth of 0.16 in/4 mm, they become perceptibly less suitable for winter conditions. For the sake of safety, new tires should be installed.



Wear indicators at the tread-groove base, refer to arrow, are distributed over the tire's circumference and are marked on the side of the tire with TWI – Tread Wear Indicator. If the tire tread has been driven down to the wear indicators, a tread depth of 0.063 in/1.6 mm has been reached.

Wheel/tire damage

Please note that low-profile tires cause wheels, tires and suspension parts to be more susceptible to road hazards and consequential damages.
Unusual vibrations encountered during normal vehicle operation can indicate tire failure or some other vehicle defect. This can, for example, be caused by driving over curbs. These kinds of problems may also be signaled by other changes in vehicle response, such as a strong tendency to pull to the left or right.

In these cases, reduce speed immediately and have wheels and tires thoroughly checked. To do so, drive carefully to the nearest BMW Sports Activity Vehicle Center or tire shop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel. If necessary, have the vehicle towed there. Tire damage can be extremely dangerous for occupants and other road users.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Run-flat tires

You will recognize run-flat tires by the circular symbol containing the letters RSC on the side of the tire.
Run-flat tires consist of partially self-contained tires and special rims. The sidewall reinforcement ensures that the tire retains some residual safety in the event of pressure drop and driving remains possible to a restricted degree.

To continue driving with a damaged tire:

- ▷ With Flat Tire Monitor, refer to Indication of a flat tire page 88
- ▷ With Tire Pressure Monitor, refer to Message with low tire inflation pressure page 90

New wheels and tires

⚠ Have new wheels and tires installed only by your BMW Sports Activity Vehicle Center or a tire shop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel. If this work is not carried out properly, there is a danger of subsequent damage and related safety hazards. Make sure that the new wheels are balanced.◀

Retreaded tires

⚠ BMW does not recommend that you use retreaded tires, as driving safety may be impaired. The causes for this include the possibly different tire casing structures and the often wide variations in their age, which can result in a limited service life.◀

The right wheels and tires

⚠ BMW recommends that you use only wheel and tire combinations that BMW has tested and approved for your particular vehicle. Variations in factors such as manufacturing tolerances mean that even wheels and tires with identical official size ratings could actually have different dimensions than the approved units – these differences could lead to body contact, and with it the risk of severe accidents. If non-approved wheels and tires are used, BMW cannot evaluate their suitability, and therefore cannot be held liable for driving safety.◀

CarManuals2.com

⚠ When changing to larger wheels and tires, it may be necessary to make changes to the wheel-well trim piece, as otherwise road users could be endangered or the vehicle could be damaged. Only have this work carried out by a BMW Sports Activity Vehicle Center or a workshop that works in accordance with BMW guidelines and uses appropriately trained personnel.◀

You can ask your BMW Sports Activity Vehicle Center for the correct wheel/tire combination.

The correct wheel/tire combination also affects various systems whose function would otherwise be impaired, e.g. ABS, DSC, xDrive or Flat Tire Monitor*.

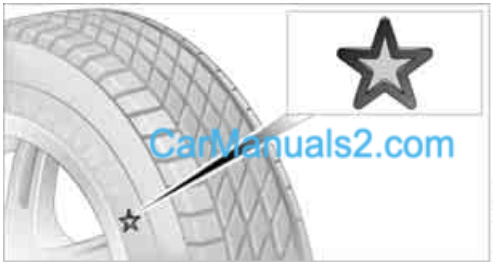
To maintain good handling and vehicle response, use only tires of a single tread configuration from a single manufacturer. Following tire damage, have the original wheel and tire combination remounted on the vehicle as soon as possible.

Wheels with electronics for TPM Tire Pressure Monitor

When mounting new tires or changing from summer to winter tires or vice versa, only use wheels with TPM electronics, otherwise the Tire Pressure Monitor cannot detect a flat tire, refer to page 89. Your BMW Sports Activity Vehicle Center will be happy to advise you on this subject.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Recommended tire brands



Certain tire makes are recommended by BMW depending on the tire size. You can recognize these from the clearly visible BMW marking on the tire sidewall.

When used properly, these tires comply with the most demanding standards for safety and vehicle response.

Run-flat tires

When mounting new tires, or changing from summer to winter tires or vice versa, use run-flat tires for your own safety. In addition, no spare tire is available in case of a flat tire. Your BMW Sports Activity Vehicle Center will be happy to advise you.

For safety reasons, BMW recommends that you do not have damaged run-flat tires repaired; they should be replaced.◀

Special characteristics of winter tires

BMW recommends winter tires for use in cold winter driving conditions. Although all-season M+S tires provide better winter traction than summer tires, they generally fail to provide the same levels of cold-weather performance as winter tires.

Pay attention to speed

Always observe the maximum permissible speed for the winter tires, otherwise tire damage may occur, which can result in accidents.◀

Storage

Store wheels and tires in a cool, dry place with as little exposure to light as possible. Always protect tires against all contact with oil, grease and fuels. Do not exceed the maximum tire inflation pressure indicated on the side wall of the tire.

Rotating wheels between axles

BMW does not recommend moving the front wheels to the rear or vice versa, as otherwise the handling characteristics may be impaired.

Snow chains*

BMW only tests certain fine-link snow chains, classifies them as road-safe and recommends them. Your BMW Sports Activity Vehicle Center can provide you with this information.

Use is only permissible in pairs on the rear wheels.

Observe the manufacturer's instructions when mounting snow chains. Do not exceed a speed of 30 mph/50 km/h with the chains mounted.

After mounting snow chains, do not initialize the Flat Tire Monitor*, as otherwise incorrect displays can occur.
When you are driving with snow chains, it can be beneficial to activate DTC briefly, refer to page 85.◀

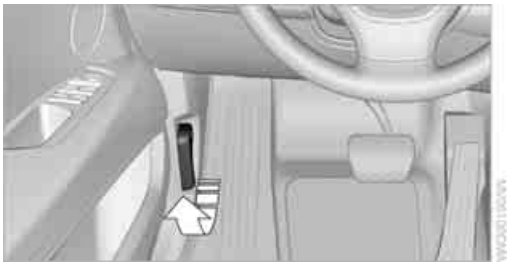
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Under the hood

Never attempt to perform any service or repair operations on your vehicle without the required professional technical training. If you do not know what repair procedures to follow, have work on your vehicle done only by your BMW Sports Activity Vehicle Center or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel. If this work is not carried out properly, there is a danger of subsequent damage and related safety hazards.◀

Hood

Releasing



Pull lever.

Opening

Press the release handle and open the hood.

CarManuals2.com

Closing

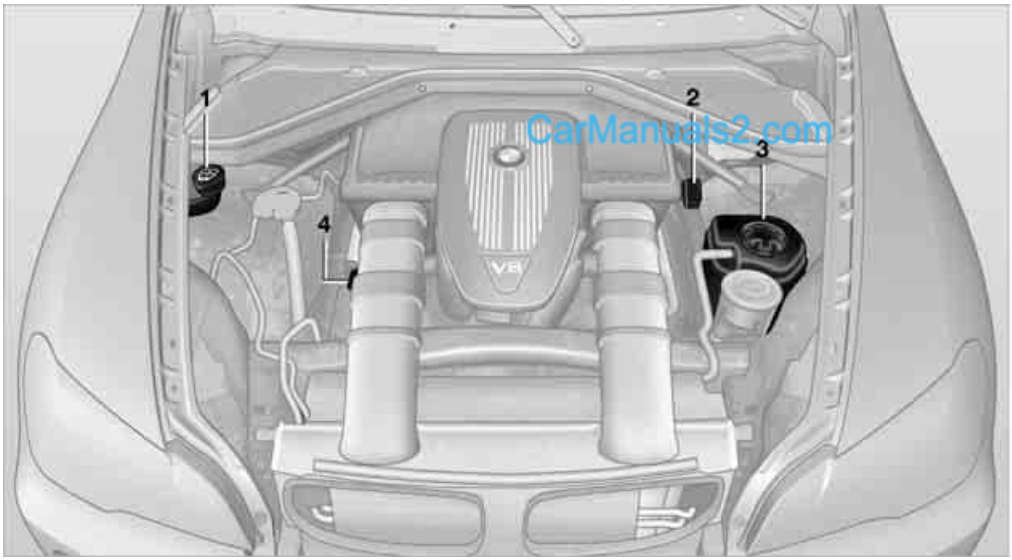
Close the hood from a height of approx. 16 in/ 40 cm with momentum. It must be clearly heard to engage.

Make sure that the closing path of the hood is clear, otherwise injuries may result.

If you see any signs that the hood is not completely closed while driving your vehicle, you should stop at once and close it securely.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Engine compartment



1 Washer fluid reservoir of the headlamp and windshield cleaning systems, refer to page 64

2 Starting-aid terminal, refer to page 237

3 Expansion tank for coolant, refer to page 225

4 Filler neck for engine oil, refer to Adding engine oil, page 224

Engine oil

The engine oil consumption is dependent on driving style and driving conditions.

Checking engine oil level

Your vehicle is equipped with an electronic oil level check.

The condition for the most accurate indication of the oil level possible is measurement with the engine at operating temperature, i.e. following an uninterrupted drive of at least 6 miles/10 km. You can display the oil level while driving or when stopped on a level surface with the engine running.

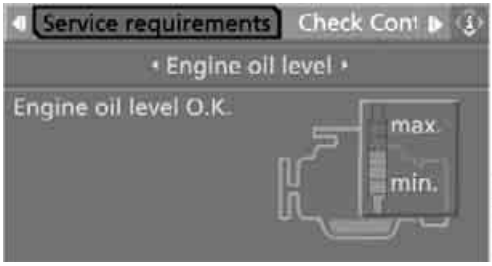
iDrive, for explanation of concept, refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Info sources" and press the controller.

4. Select "Service" and press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Service requirements" is selected and press the controller.



6. Change to the second field from the top if necessary. Turn the controller until "Engine oil level" is selected and press the controller. The oil level is displayed.

Possible messages

▷ "Engine oil level O.K."

▷ "No measurement available: Updating engine oil level measurement...":
Engine oil level is being measured. This process can take approx. 3 minutes when stopped on a level surface and approx. 5 minutes while driving.

▷ "Oil level at the minimum! Refill with 1 quart of engine oil.":
Add 1 US quart/liter of engine oil at the next opportunity.

▷ "Engine oil level too high":

⚠ Have the vehicle checked immediately, otherwise engine damage may result if too much oil has been added.◀

▷ "Please observe recalculated service interval for engine oil":
Do not add engine oil. Continued driving is possible. To do this, observe the recalculated remaining mileage until the next oil change service, refer to page 226. Have the system checked as soon as possible.

Adding engine oil

CarManuals2.com

Do not add 1 US quart/1 liter of oil until a corresponding message is shown on the Control Display.

⚠ Add oil within the next 125 miles/200 km, otherwise the engine could be damaged.◀

⚠ Continuous exposure to used oil has caused cancer in laboratory testing.
For this reason, any skin areas that come into contact with oil should be thoroughly washed with soap and water.
Keep oil, grease etc. out of reach of children and observe the warnings on the containers to prevent health risks.◀

Oil change

Only have an oil change carried out by a BMW Sports Activity Vehicle Center or a workshop that works in accordance with BMW guidelines and uses appropriately trained personnel.

Approved engine oils

The quality of the engine oil selected has critical significance for the operation and service life of an engine. BMW continuously approves specific oils after confirming their suitability for use in its vehicles with extensive testing.

⚠ Do not use oil additives, as these may result in engine damage.◀

Only use approved BMW High Performance Synthetic Oil.

If BMW High Performance Synthetic Oil is unavailable, you can add small quantities of other synthetic oils between oil changes. Only use oils of the specification API SH or higher.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Your BMW Sports Activity Vehicle Center will be happy to answer detailed questions on BMW High Performance Synthetic Oil or approved synthetic oils.◀

You can also call BMW of North America at 1-800-831-1117 or visit the website at www.bmwusa.com to obtain this information.

Viscosity grades

Viscosity is a measure of an oil's flow rating and is specified in SAE grades.

The choice of the right SAE grade is based on the climatic conditions in the region in which you normally drive your BMW.

Approved oils belong to the SAE grades 5W-40 and 5W-30.◀

These oils can be used for driving at all outside temperatures.

Coolant

Do not add coolant to the cooling system when the engine is hot. Escaping coolant can cause burns.◀

CarManuals2.com

Coolant is comprised of water and coolant additive. Not all commercially available additives are suitable for your BMW. Your BMW Sports Activity Vehicle Center can recommend suitable additives.

Only use suitable additives, otherwise engine damage may result. The additives present a health hazard; observe the instructions on the containers.◀

Comply with the appropriate environmental protection regulations when disposing of coolant additives.◀

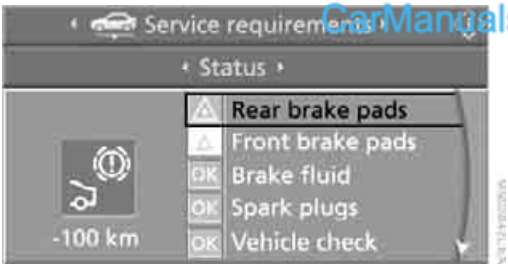
Checking coolant level

1. The engine must be at ambient temperature.
2. Turn the cap of the expansion tank counterclockwise to allow any accumulated pressure to escape, then continue turning to open.
3. The coolant level is correct when the coolant level is between the MIN and MAX marks, refer to the diagram adjacent to the filler neck.
4. If the coolant is low, slowly add coolant up to the specified level; do not overfill.
5. Turn the cap until there is an audible click.
6. Have the reason for the coolant loss eliminated as soon as possible.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Maintenance

BMW maintenance system



CarManuals2.com

The BMW maintenance system supports the preservation of the traffic and operating safety of your BMW. The service schedule also includes operations related to the vehicle's comfort and convenience features, such as replacement of the filters for the inside air. The ultimate objective is to ensure economical maintenance by providing the ideal service for your vehicle.

Should the day come when you decide to sell your BMW, a complete dealer service history will prove to be an asset of inestimable value.

CBS Condition Based Service

Sensors and special algorithms take the different driving conditions of your BMW into account. Condition Based Service uses this to determine the current and future service requirements. By letting you define a service and maintenance regimen that reflects your own individual requirements, the system builds the basis for trouble-free driving.

You can set the Control Display to show remaining distances and times of selected maintenance intervals and legally mandated deadlines, refer to page 71:

- ▷ Engine oil
- ▷ Brake pads, front and rear separately
- ▷ Brake fluid
- ▷ Vehicle check
- ▷ Legally mandated inspections depending on local regulations

Service data in remote control

Your vehicle stores the information required for maintenance continuously in the remote control during driving. After accessing the data stored in the remote control, your BMW Service Advisor can suggest precisely the right array of service procedures for your own individual vehicle. You should therefore hand over the remote control you last used to drive to the BMW Service Advisor when you take your vehicle in for service.

⚠ Make sure the date is set correctly, refer to page 78, otherwise the effectiveness of CBS Condition Based Service is not ensured.◀

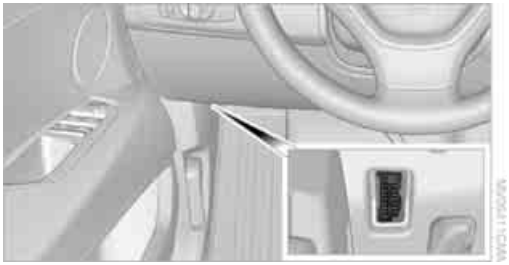
Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models and Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models

Please consult your Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models and Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models for additional information on service requirements.

▷ BMW recommends that you have service and repair operations performed at your BMW Sports Activity Vehicle Center.
Take the time to ensure that these service procedures are confirmed by entries in your vehicle's Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models and Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models. These entries verify that your vehicle has received the specified regular maintenance.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Socket for OBD Onboard Diagnostics interface



Components which are decisive for the exhaust-gas composition can be checked via the OBD socket with a device.

This socket is located to the left on the driver's side, on the underside of the instrument panel under a cover.

Exhaust-gas values

The warning lamp lights up. The exhaust-gas values worsen. Have the vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Display of the previously described malfunction in Canadian models.

The lamp flashes under certain conditions. This is a sign of excessive misfiring of the engine. In this case you should reduce your speed and proceed to the nearest BMW Sports Activity Vehicle Center. Heavy engine misfiring causes serious damage to the emission-relevant components, especially the catalytic converter, within a short time.

The warning lamp lights up if the fuel filler cap is not properly tightened and the OBD system can close when fuel vapor escapes. If the fuel filler cap is then tightened, the display must go out within a few days.

Event Data Recorders

Your vehicle may be equipped with one or several measuring and diagnosis modules, or with a device for recording or transmitting certain vehicle data or information. If you have also signed a contract of participation for BMW Assist, certain vehicle data can be transmitted or recorded to enable corresponding services.

Care

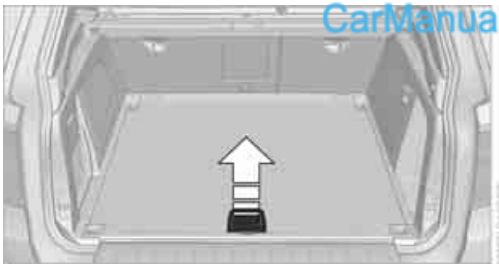
Important information on the care and maintenance of your BMW is contained in the Caring for your vehicle brochure.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Replacing components

Onboard toolkit



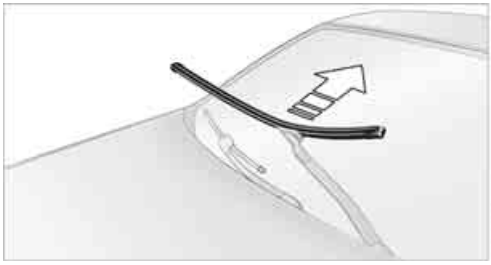
CarManuals2.com

The onboard toolkit is located in the cargo bay under the floor panel.

Replacing wiper blades

Front

1. Fold down the wiper arm.
2. Swing the wiper blade upward.
3. Remove the wiper blade toward the windshield, refer to arrow.



Rear

1. Lift off the wiper arm completely and pull off the wiper blade, refer to arrow.
2. Mount the new wiper blade and press on until it is heard to engage.

Lamps and bulbs

Lamps and bulbs make an essential contribution to vehicle safety. You must be duly diligent in replacing them. BMW recommends having your BMW Sports Activity Vehicle Center perform any work that you do not feel competent to perform yourself or that is not described here.

Never touch the glass of new bulbs with your bare fingers, as even minute amounts of contamination will burn into the bulb's surface and reduce its service life. Use a clean cloth, napkin, etc., or hold the bulb by its metal socket.◀

A replacement bulb set is available from your BMW Sports Activity Vehicle Center.

Only replace bulbs when cool, as otherwise you may be burned.◀

Whenever you perform any work on the electrical system, turn off the systems/consumers involved to prevent short circuits from occurring. To avoid possible injury or equipment damage when replacing bulbs, observe any instructions provided by the bulb manufacturer.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

For care and maintenance of the headlamps, please follow the instructions in the separate Caring for your vehicle brochure.

For bulbs for which replacement is not described and for checking and adjusting headlamp aim, please contact your BMW Sports Activity Vehicle Center.◀

Light-emitting diodes LEDs

Light-emitting diodes installed behind translucent lenses serve as the light source for many of the controls and displays in your vehicle. These light-emitting diodes, which operate using a concept similar to that applied in conventional lasers, are officially designated as Class 1 light-emitting diodes.

Do not remove the covers, and never stare into the unfiltered light for several hours, as irritation of the retina could result.◀

Xenon bulbs

The service life of these bulbs is very long and the probability of a failure is very low, provided that they are not switched on and off an unusual number of times. If one of these bulbs should nevertheless fail, it is possible to continue driving with great caution using the fog lamps, provided traffic laws in your area do not prohibit this.

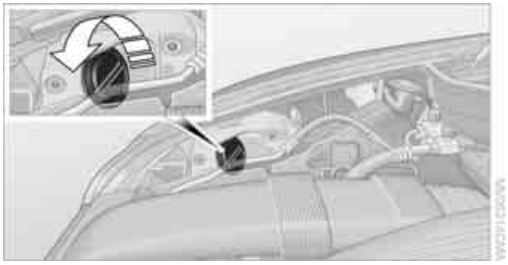
Have work on the xenon light unit including changing the bulb carried out only by your BMW Sports Activity Vehicle Center or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel. Due to the high voltage present in the system, there is a danger of fatal injuries when work is carried out improperly.◀

Halogen bulbs: Parking lamps and low beams

H8 bulb, 35 watts

The bulb is pressurized. Therefore, wear safety glasses and protective gloves. Otherwise there is a danger of injuries if the bulb is accidentally damaged during replacement.◀

1. Turn the cover to the left and remove.



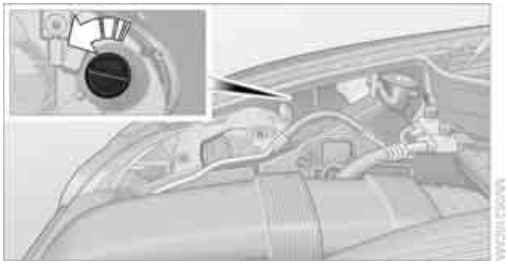
2. Turn the bulbs to the left, pull off the connector and replace.
3. Install in the reverse order.

Turn signals, front

24-watt bulb, PSY24W

CarManuals2.com

1. Unscrew bulb holder with bulb to the left, refer to arrow, and replace.



2. Install in the reverse order.

Side marker lamps, rear

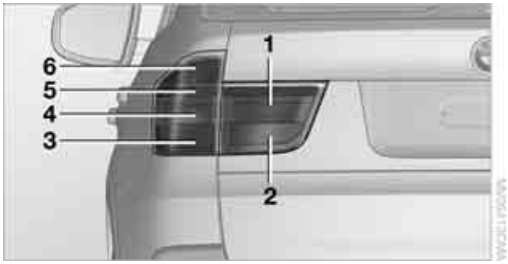
To replace, please go to a BMW Sports Activity Vehicle Center or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Tail lamps

- Turn signals, brake lamps: 21-watt bulb, P21W
- Backup lamps and brake force display: 16-watt bulb, W16W
- Rear lamp: LED technology.
  In case of a defect, please go to a BMW Sports Activity Vehicle Center or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel.

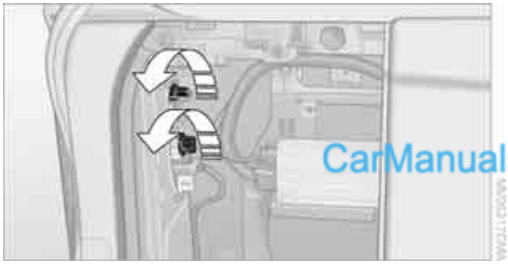
Position of lamps



1 Rear lamp
2 Brake force display
3 Turn signal
4 Brake lamp/rear lamp
5 Backup lamp
6 Brake lamp

Brake lamp

1. Open the side panel in the cargo bay.
2. Remove the first-aid kit* and warning triangle* if necessary. Fold up the insulation.
3. Turn the bulb socket concerned to the left and remove.



4. Remove the upper bulb for replacement. Apply gentle pressure to the lower bulb while turning it to the left for removal and replacement.
5. Remount the side panel.

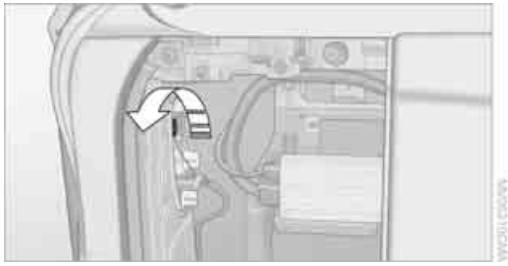
Turn signal

1. Open the side panel in the cargo bay.
2. Remove the first-aid kit* and warning triangle* if necessary. Fold up the insulation.
3. Turn the bulb socket to the left and remove.

4. Apply gentle pressure to the bulb while turning it to the left for removal and replacement.
5. Remount the side panel.

Backup lamp

1. Open the side panel in the cargo bay.
2. Remove the first-aid kit* and warning triangle* if necessary. Fold up the insulation.
3. Turn the bulb socket to the left and remove.



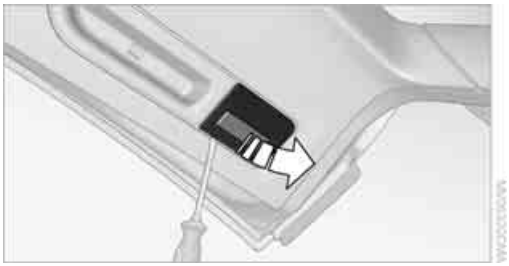
4. Remove the bulb for replacement.
5. Remount the side panel.

CarManuals2.com

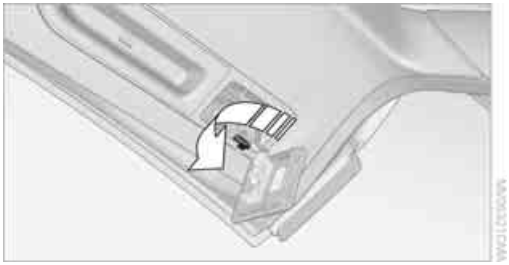
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Brake force display

1. Carefully remove the cap in the cover of the liftgate with a screwdriver.

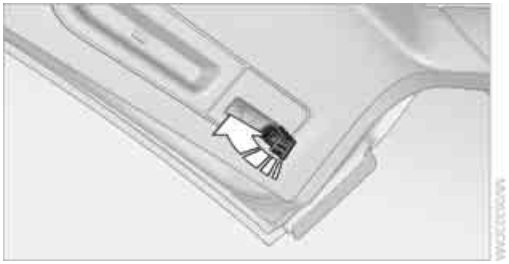


2. Turn the bulb socket to the left and remove.



3. Apply gentle pressure to the bulb while turning it to the left for removal and replacement.
4. Insert the bulb socket in the liftgate and engage it.
5. Before installing the cap, unclip the cargo bay lamp.
   Then lay the cap on its upper side and close it, refer to arrow.

6. Position the cargo bay lamp and clip it in, refer to arrow.



License plate lamp

5-watt bulb, C11 12W

1. Slide the lamp to the right with a screwdriver, refer to arrow **1**.

2. Remove the lamp, arrow **2**.
3. Replace the bulb.
4. Reinstall the lamp.

Center brake lamp

This lamp uses LED technology for operation. In case of a defect, please go to a BMW Sports Activity Vehicle Center or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Changing wheels

Your BMW is equipped with run-flat tires as standard. As a result, it is not necessary to change the wheel immediately in the case of air loss in the event of a breakdown.

To continue driving with a damaged tire:

- ▷ With Flat Tire Monitor, refer to Indication of a flat tire page 88
- ▷ With Tire Pressure Monitor, refer to Message with low tire inflation pressure page 90

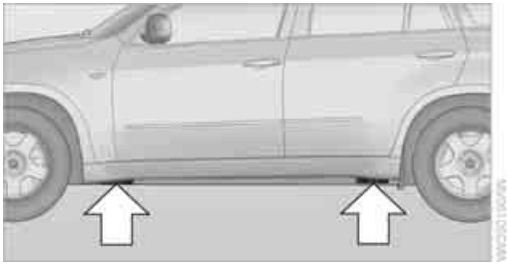
CarManuals2.com

You will recognize run-flat tires by a circular symbol containing the letters RSC on the side of the tire, refer to Run-flat tires, page 220.

When mounting new tires, or changing from summer to winter tires or vice versa, use run-flat tires for your own safety. No spare tire is available in case of a flat tire. Your BMW Sports Activity Vehicle Center will be happy to advise you. Also refer to New wheels and tires, page 220.

▷ Suitable tools for changing tires are available as accessories at your BMW Sports Activity Vehicle Center.◀

Jacking points for vehicle jack



The jacking points for the vehicle jack are located in the positions shown.

Compact wheel*

⚠ Safety precautions in the event of a flat tire or wheel change: park the vehicle as far as possible from passing traffic and on solid ground. Switch on the hazard warning flashers. Set the parking brake and engage transmission position P.

Have all vehicle occupants get out of the vehicle and ensure that they remain outside the immediate area in a safe place, such as behind a guardrail.

If a warning triangle* or portable hazard warning lamp* is required, set it up on the roadside at an appropriate distance from the rear of the vehicle. Comply with all safety guidelines and regulations.

Change the wheel only on a level, firm surface which is not slippery. The vehicle or the jack could slip to the side if you attempt to raise the vehicle on a soft or slippery surface such as snow, ice, tiles, etc.

Position the jack on a firm support surface.

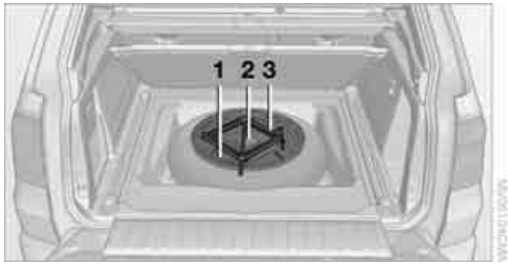
Do not use a wooden block or similar object as a support base for the jack, as this would prevent it from extending to its full support height and reduce its load-carrying capacity.

To avoid serious or fatal injury: never lie under the vehicle, and never start the engine while it is supported by the jack.◀

What you will need

To avoid rattling noises later on, note the positions of the tools before removing them, then return them to their initial positions after completing work.

The tools are located in the mount under the floor panel flap.



1 Lug wrench*

2 Vehicle jack crank*

3 Vehicle jack*

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Removing compact wheel

The compact wheel is located in the cargo bay under the floor panel.

1. Remove the tool mount
2. Unscrew the wing nut **1**.
3. Remove the washer **2** laterally.
4. Remove the compact wheel.

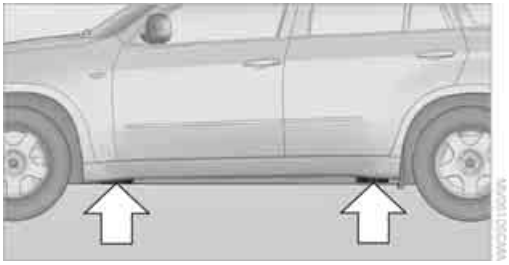
Preparing wheel change

1. Observe the safety precautions above.
2. Loosen the lug bolts a half turn.

Jacking up vehicle

1. Position the vehicle jack at the jacking point closest to the wheel so that the entire surface of the jack base rests on the ground perpendicularly beneath the jacking point.

   The vehicle jack is designed for changing wheels only. Do not attempt to raise another vehicle model with it or to raise any load of any kind. To do so could cause accidents and personal injury.◀



CarManuals2.com

2. Guide the jack head into the rectangular recess of the jacking point when cranking up, refer to illustration detail.

3. Jack the vehicle up until the wheel you are changing is raised from the ground.

Mounting a wheel

1. Unscrew the lug bolts and remove the wheel.
2. Remove accumulations of mud or dirt from the mounting surfaces of the wheel and hub. Also clean the lug bolts.
3. Position the new wheel or compact wheel. Secure the wheel by screwing at least two lug bolts into opposite bolt holes.
   When you mount wheels other than Genuine BMW light-alloy wheels, different lug bolts may also be required.
4. Screw in the remaining lug bolts. Tighten all the bolts securely in a diagonal pattern.
5. Lower the vehicle and remove the jack from beneath the vehicle.

After mounting

1. Tighten the lug bolts in a diagonal pattern.

   To ensure safety, always have the lug bolts checked with a calibrated torque wrench as soon as possible to ensure that they are tightened to the specified torque. The tightening torque is 101 lb ft/140 Nm.◀

2. Stow the defective wheel in the cargo bay.

   The defective wheel cannot be stored under the floor panel flap due to its different dimensions.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

3. Check and correct the tire inflation pressure at the earliest opportunity.

   ▷ Protect valve stems with valve screw caps against dirt and contamination. Dirt in valve stems is a frequent source of gradual air loss.◀

CarManuals2.com

4. Initialize the Flat Tire Monitor, refer to page 87, or reset the Tire Pressure Monitor, refer to page 89.
5. Replace the damaged tire as soon as possible and have the new wheel/tire balanced.

Driving with compact wheel

Drive reservedly and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

The driving characteristics change, for example reduced track stability on braking, extended braking distance, and altered self-steering characteristics in the limit range. In conjunction with winter tires, these characteristics are more pronounced.

⚠ Only one compact wheel may be mounted. You should re-equip with wheels and tires of the original size as quickly as possible.◀

Vehicle battery

Battery care

The battery is 100% maintenance-free, i.e., the electrolyte will last for the life of the battery when the vehicle is operated in a temperate climate. Your BMW Sports Activity Vehicle Center will be glad to advise in all matters concerning the battery.

Charging battery

Only charge the battery in the vehicle via the terminals in the engine compartment with the engine off. Connections, refer to Jump starting on page 237.

Disposal

Have old batteries disposed of following replacement at your BMW Sports Activity Vehicle Center or bring them to a collection point. Maintain the battery in an upright position for transport and storage. Always restrain the battery to prevent it from tipping over during transport.◀

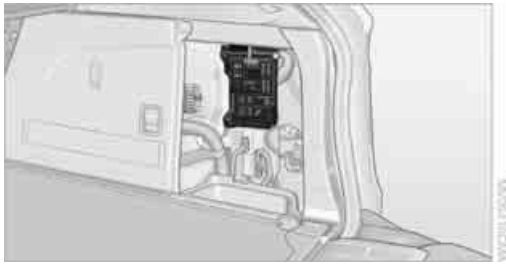
Power failure

After a temporary power loss, the functioning of some equipment may be limited and require reinitialization. Individual settings are also lost and must be updated:

- ▷ Seat, mirror and steering wheel memory
  The positions must be stored again, refer to page 42.
- ▷ Time and Date
  The values must be updated, refer to pages 77, 78.
- ▷ Radio
  Stations must be stored again if necessary, refer to page 160.
- ▷ Navigation system
  Wait until the system starts, refer to page 151.

Fuses

⚠ Never attempt to repair a blown fuse and do not replace a defective fuse with a substitute of another color or amperage rating, as this could lead to a circuit overload, ultimately resulting in a fire in the vehicle.◀



Open the right-hand side panel in the cargo bay.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Other fuses are located in the front passenger footwell on the underside of the instrument panel. In case of a defect, please go to a BMW Sports Activity Vehicle Center or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel.

Spare fuses, a pair of plastic tweezers and information on the fuse assignment are located near the fuses in the cargo bay.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Giving and receiving assistance

Emergency call

Conditions for an emergency call:

- ▷ Full preparation package mobile phone. With this equipment, an emergency call is still possible when no mobile phone is logged on in the vehicle.
- ▷ BMW Assist is activated. Activating BMW Assist, refer to page 207.
- ▷ Radio readiness is switched on.
- ▷ The BMW Assist system is logged in on a wireless communications network.
- ▷ The emergency call system is operable.

When the contract of participation with BMW Assist expires, the BMW Assist system can be deactivated by a BMW Sports Activity Vehicle Center without having to visit a workshop. Following deactivation of the BMW Assist system, no emergency calls can be made. The BMW Assist system be reactivated by a BMW Sports Activity Vehicle Center after signing a new contract.

Initiating an emergency call

1. Briefly press protective cover to open. Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the arrangement of the switches and indicator lamps may differ somewhat.

2. Press the SOS button for at least 2 seconds.

The LED in the button lights up. As soon as the voice connection to the BMW Assist Response Center has been established, the LED flashes.

When the emergency call is received at the BMW Assist Response Center, the BMW Assist Response Center contacts you and arranges for additional steps to help you.

If conditions allow, remain in the vehicle until the connection has been established. You will then be able to provide a detailed description of the situation.

If the current position of your vehicle can be determined, it will be forwarded to the BMW Assist Response Center.

If the LED flashes, but you are unable to hear the BMW Assist Response Center through the hands-free system, this could indicate, for instance, that the hands-free system is no longer operational. However, you may then still be audible for the BMW Assist Response Center.

Under certain conditions, an emergency call is automatically initiated immediately after a severe accident. The automatic emergency call is not affected by the button being pressed.

CarManuals2.com

⚠ For technical reasons, the emergency call cannot be guaranteed under unfavorable conditions.◀

Warning triangle*

The warning triangle is located in the cargo bay. Open the left-hand side panel.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

First-aid kit*

Some of the articles contained in the first-aid kit have a limited service life. Therefore, check the expiration dates of the contents regularly and replace the contents concerned in good time if necessary.

The first-aid kit is located in the cargo bay. Open the left-hand side panel.

Roadside Assistance*

The Roadside Assistance of the BMW Group offers you assistance in the event of a breakdown around the clock, including on weekends and public holidays.

The phone numbers of the Roadside Assistance in your home country can be found in the Contact brochure.

With BMW Assist or TeleService, you can contact the Roadside Assistance of the BMW Group for assistance in the event of a breakdown directly via iDrive, refer to page 203.

Jump starting

When your battery is discharged, you can use two jumper cables to start your BMW with power from the battery in a second vehicle. You can also use the same method to help start another vehicle. Use only jumper cables with fully-insulated clamp handles.

⚠ To avoid the risk of potentially fatal injury, always avoid all contact with electrical components while the engine is running. Carefully adhere to the following sequence, both to prevent damage to one or both vehicles, and to guard against possible personal injuries.◀

Preparation

1. Check whether the battery of the other vehicle has a voltage of 12 Volts and approximately the same capacitance in Ah. This information can be found on the battery.
2. Switch off the engine of the assisting vehicle.
3. Switch off any electrical systems and components in both vehicles.

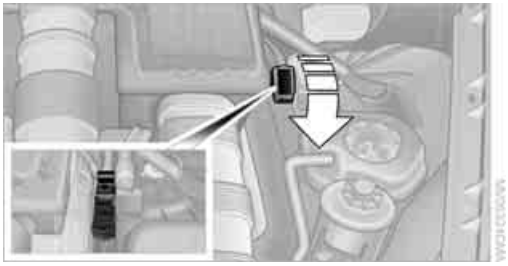
⚠ There must not be any contact between the bodies of the two vehicles, otherwise there is a danger of shorting.◀

Connecting jumper cables

⚠ To avoid personal injury from sparks, follow this sequence when connecting jumper cables.◀

On your BMW the so-called starting-aid terminal in the engine compartment acts as the battery positive terminal, also refer to the engine compartment overview on page 223. The cover cap is marked with +.

1. Fold open the cover of the BMW starting-aid terminal. To do so, pull the tab.

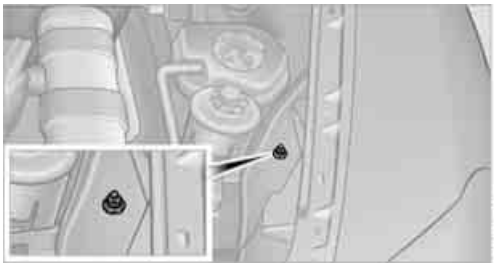


2. Attach one end of the jumper cable plus/+ to the positive terminal of the battery or a starting-aid terminal of the vehicle providing assistance.
3. Attach the second end of the cable to the positive terminal of the battery or to a starting-aid terminal of the vehicle to be started.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

4. Attach one end of the jumper cable minus/– to the negative terminal of the battery or to an engine or body ground of the assisting vehicle.
   Your BMW has a special nut as body ground or negative pole.



5. Attach the second end of the cable to the negative terminal of the battery or to the engine or body ground of the vehicle to be started.

Starting engine

1. Start the engine on the assisting vehicle and allow it to run at idle for several minutes at slightly increased speed.
2. Start the engine on the other vehicle in the usual way.
   If the first starting attempt is not successful, wait a few minutes before another attempt in order to allow the discharged battery to recharge.
3. Let the engines run for a few minutes.
4. Disconnect the jumper cables by reversing the connection sequence.

Check the battery and recharge if necessary.

Never use spray fluids to start the engine.◀

Tow-starting and towing

Observe applicable laws and regulations for tow-starting and towing.◀

Do not transport any passengers other than the driver in a vehicle that is being towed.◀

CarManuals2.com

Using tow fitting

The screw-on tow-fitting must always be carried in the vehicle. It can be screwed in at the front or rear of the BMW.

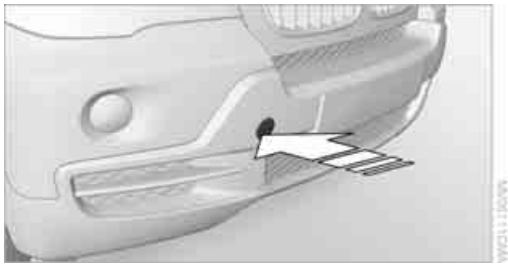
It is located in the toolkit under the floor panel flap in the cargo bay, refer to page 228.

Use only the tow fitting provided with the vehicle and screw it all the way in. Use the tow fitting for towing only on roads. Avoid lateral loading of the tow fitting, e.g. do not lift the vehicle by the tow fitting. Otherwise damage to the tow fitting and the vehicle can occur.◀

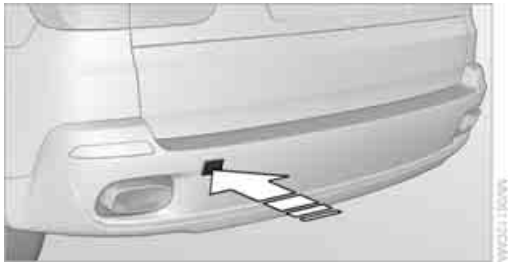
Access to screw thread

Cover panel in bumper: press on the arrow symbol on the cover panel.

Front



Rear



Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Being towed

Make sure that the ignition is switched on, refer to page 56, otherwise the low beams, tail lamps, turn signals and windshield wipers would not be available. When the engine is stopped, there is no power assist. This then requires increased effort for braking and steering. Active steering is deactivated and larger steering wheel movements are required.◀

Switch on the hazard warning flashers depending on the local regulations. If the electrical system fails, mark the vehicle to be towed, e.g. with a sign or warning triangle in the rear window.

Engage transmission position N and release the parking brake before towing.
Manually releasing transmission lock, refer to page 61.

Do not exceed a towing speed of 45 mph/ 70 km/h and a towing distance of 90 miles/150 km, otherwise the automatic transmission may be damaged.◀

Towing methods

Do not lift vehicle by tow fitting or body and chassis parts, otherwise damage may result.◀

CarManuals2.com

In some countries, towing with tow bars or ropes in public traffic is not permitted. Familiarize yourself with the regulations on towing in the respective country.

With tow bar

The towing vehicle may not be lighter than the vehicle to be towed, otherwise it will not be possible to reliably control vehicle response.◀

The tow fittings used should be on the same side on both vehicles. Should it prove impossible to avoid mounting the tow bar at an offset angle, please observe the following:

- ▷ Clearance and maneuvering capability will be sharply limited during cornering.
- ▷ When mounted at an angle, the tow bar will exert lateral forces, tending to push the vehicle sideways.

Only attach the tow bar to the tow fittings, as attachment to other vehicle parts can lead to damage.◀

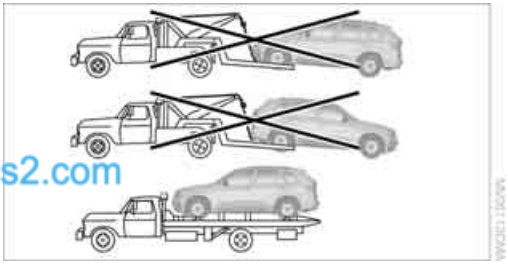
With tow rope

When starting off in the towing vehicle, make sure that the tow rope is taut.

To avoid jerking and the associated stresses on vehicle components when towing, always use nylon ropes or nylon straps. Only attach tow ropes to the tow fittings, as attachment to other vehicle parts can lead to damage.◀

With tow truck

Do not tow the X5 with the front or rear axle raised individually, otherwise the wheels may lock and the transfer case may be damaged.◀



The X5 may only be transported on a flat bed.

Tow-starting

The engine cannot be started by tow-starting. Start the engine by jump starting it, refer to page 237.
Have the cause of the starting difficulties eliminated.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Reference

This chapter contains the technical data, the short commands of the voice command system, and the index that will direct you as quickly as possible to the information you are looking for.

CarManuals2.com

Technical data

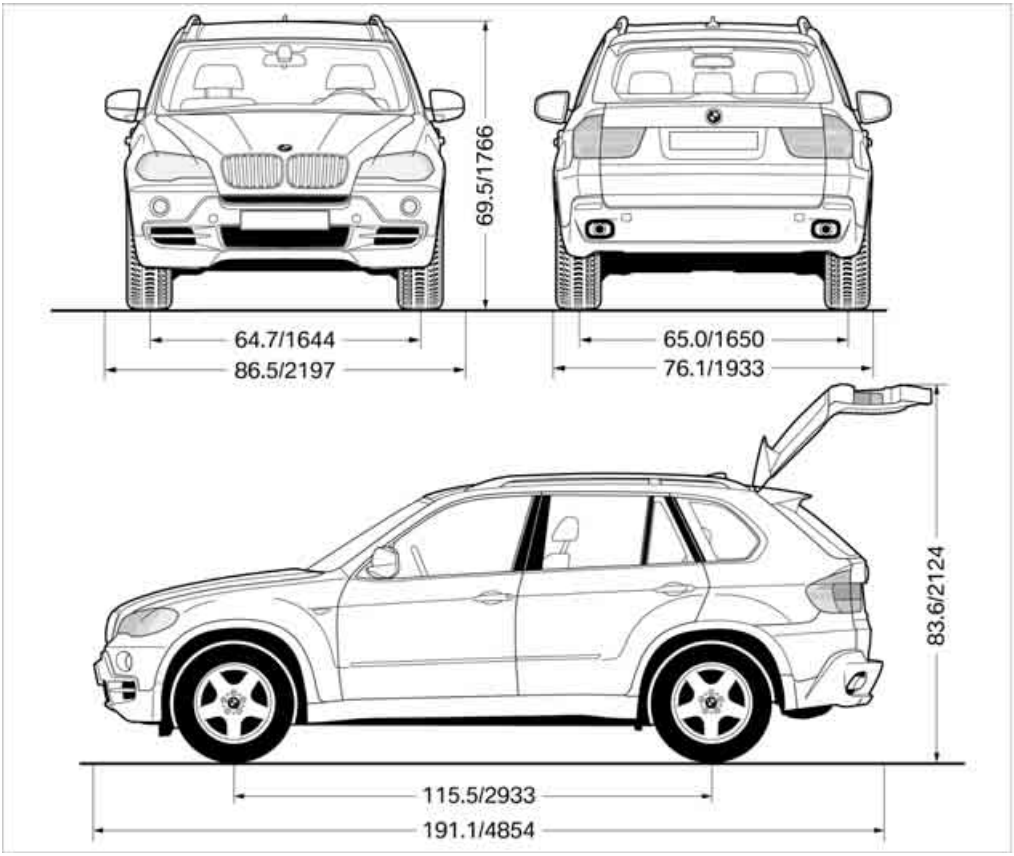
Engine data

CarManuals2.com

		X5 3.0si	X5 4.8i
Displacement	cu in/cm³	182.8/2,996	292.9/4,799
No. of cylinders		6	8
Maximum output	hp	260	350
at engine speed	rpm	6,600	6,300
Maximum torque	lb ft/Nm	225/305	350/475
at engine speed	rpm	2,750	3,400-3,800

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Dimensions



All dimensions given in inches/mm.
Smallest turning circle diam.: 42,0 ft/12.8 m

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Weights

		X5 3.0si	X5 4.8i
Vehicle weight empty with 3rd row seats	lbs./kg	4,982/2,260	5,335/2,420
Approved gross vehicle weight	lbs./kg	6,327/2,870	6,537/2,965
without 3rd row seats	lbs./kg	5,963/2,705	6,173/2,800
Load	lbs./kg	1,345/610	1,202/545
without 3rd row seats	lbs./kg	1,113/505	970/440
Approved front axle load	lbs./kg	2,767/1,255	2,965/1,345
without 3rd row seats	lbs./kg	2,756/1,250	2,965/1,345
Approved rear axle load	lbs./kg	3,770/1,710	3,781/1,715
without 3rd row seats	lbs./kg	3,417/1,550	3,428/1,555
Approved roof load capacity	lbs./kg	220/100	220/100
Cargo bay capacity	cu ft/l	21.9-61.8/ 620-1,750	21.9-61.8/ 620-1,750

Never exceed either the approved axle loads or the gross vehicle weight.

Capacities

CarManuals2.com

			Notes
Fuel tank	US gal/liters	approx. 22.5/85	Fuel grade: page 213
of that reserve			
X5 3.0si	US gal/liters	approx. 2.1/8	
X5 4.8i	US gal/liters	approx. 2.6/10	
Windshield washer with headlamp washer system	US quarts/liters	approx. 6.9/6.5	For more details: page 64

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Short commands of voice command system*

With short commands you can carry out certain functions directly, regardless of which menu item is selected. Here are the important short commands for the voice command system.

CarManuals2.com

Assistance window

Function	Command
To open the assistance window 20	›Assistance window‹
To select the display in the assistance window 20	›Assistance window map facing north‹, ›Assistance window map direction of travel‹, ›Assistance window arrow display‹, ›Assistance window perspective‹, ›Assistance window current position‹, ›Assistance window trip computer‹ or ›Assistance window onboard info‹
To change scale in assistance window 145	›Assistance window scale ... feet‹ or ›Assistance window scale ... miles‹

Communication

Function	Command
To open phone 189	›Phone‹
To dial phone number 193	›Dial number‹
To display phone book 194	›A to Z‹
To select from the phone book 194	›Call ...‹ or ›Dial name‹
To display "Top 8" 195	›Top 8‹
To redial 194	›Redial‹
To display "Received calls" 195	›Received calls‹
To display "Missed calls" 195	›Missed calls‹
To display "Bluetooth" 191	›Bluetooth‹
To open BMW Assist 203	›BMW Assist‹
To open "BMW Service" 203	›BMW Service‹
To open "BMW Contact" 196	›BMW Contact‹
To open "BMW Contact Numbers" 196	›BMW Contact numbers‹
To open "Roadside Assistance" 203	›Roadside Assistance‹

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Navigation

Function	Command
To open navigation system 131	›Navigation‹
To open "Enter address" 131	›Enter address‹
To open "New destination" 131	›New destination‹
To display "Input map" 136	›Input map‹
To display destination list 138	›Destination list‹
To display address book 139	›Address book‹
To display route criteria 141	›Route preference‹
To start destination guidance 143	›Start guidance‹
To end destination guidance 143	›Stop guidance‹
To display arrow display 144	›Arrow display‹
To display map display 145	›Map‹, ›Map facing north‹, ›Map direction of travel‹ or ›Perspective‹
To change scale 145	›Scale ... miles‹ or ›Scale ... feet‹
To display roads or towns/cities along route 145	›Route list‹
To switch on voice instructions 146	›Navigation info on‹
To switch off voice instructions 146	›Navigation info off‹
To repeat voice instructions 146	›Repeat navigation info‹
To open route 141, 145	›Route menu‹
To open "New route" 147	›New route‹
To display current position 150	›Current position‹

CarManuals2.com

Onboard info

Function	Command
To open "Car Data" 69	›Car data‹
To display computer 69	›Onboard info‹
To display trip computer 70	›Trip computer‹
To open stopwatch 76	›Stopwatch‹
To open speed limit 76	›Limit‹
To activate speed limit 76	›Limit on‹
To deactivate speed limit 76	›Limit off‹

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Entertainment

Function	Command
Tone control 155	›Audio‹
To switch on radio 158	›Radio on‹, ›FM‹ or ›AM‹
To open "FM" 158	›FM menu‹
To open "AM" 158	›AM menu‹
To open "All stations" 158	›FM All stations‹
To select radio station 158	›Station ...‹, e.g. ›Station WNYC‹, or ›Choose station‹
To open "Presets" 158	›FM presets‹ or ›AM presets‹
To select stored radio station 158	›Preset ...‹, e.g. ›Preset 1‹
To open "Manual" 159	›FM manual‹, ›AM manual‹ or ›Choose frequency‹, ›Frequency ... Megahertz‹
To open strongest radio stations 159	›AM Autostore‹
To open "WB" 161	›Weatherband menu‹
To switch on weatherband 161	›Weatherband on‹
To select a weatherband station 161	›Choose weatherband station‹
To open "SAT" 163	›SAT radio menu‹
To switch on satellite radio 163	›SAT radio‹
To open "Presets" of satellite radio 164	›SAT radio presets‹
To open "All channels" of satellite radio 163	›SAT radio all channels‹
To open "Categories" of satellite radio 163	›SAT radio categories‹
To open CD player 165	›CD menu‹
To switch on CD player 165	›CD‹
To open CD changer 166	›CD-changer menu‹
To switch on CD changer 166	›CD-changer‹
To select CD 166	›CD 1...6‹
To select music track 166	›CD track ...‹
To select CD and music track 166	›CD 1...6 track ...‹
To switch on audio playback with external audio device 171	›Audio Aux‹

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Climate

Function	Command
To adjust temperature distribution for front seat heating 47	›Seat heater distribution‹
To open "Vent settings" 104	›Vent settings‹
To open "Automatic programs" 102	›Automatic programs‹
To open "Parked car ventilation" 108	›Parked car operation‹
To open "Automatic ventilation" 108	›Automatic ventilation‹
To display activation times 109	›Activation time‹

i menu

Function	Command
To open the i menu	›Settings menu‹
"Display off" 21	›Display off‹
To open "Info sources"	›Info sources‹
To open "Settings"	›Settings‹
To open "Door locks" 30	›Door locks‹
To open "Steering wheel buttons" 50	›Steering wheel buttons‹
To open "Lighting" 62	›Lighting‹
To open "Service requirements" 71	›Service requirements‹
To open "Service" 71	›Service‹
To open "BMW Service" 203	›BMW service settings‹
To display "Check Control messages" 75	›Check Control messages‹
To open "Head-Up Display" 94	›Head-up display‹
To set brightness of Control Display 78	›Brightness‹
To open "Units" 79	›Units‹
To open "Languages" 79, 146	›Language‹
To open "Time" 78	›Time‹
To open "Date" 78	›Date‹
To open "PDC" 80	›PDC‹
To open "FTM" 87	›FTM‹
To open "TPM" 89	›TPM‹
To display "Bluetooth" 192	›Bluetooth‹
To open "HDC" 85	›HDC‹

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Everything from A to Z

Index

"..." Identifies Control Display texts used to select individual functions, and indicates where to find them in the text.

A

ABS Antilock Brake System 84
Accessories 6
Access to 3rd row seats 45
Acoustic signal, refer to Check Control 74
Activated-charcoal filter 106
"Activation time" for parked car ventilation 109
Active seat 48
Active seat ventilation 47
Active steering 91
– warning lamp 91
Adapter for spare key 28
Adaptive brake lamps, refer to Brake force display 92
Adaptive Drive 86
Adaptive fixing system 117
Adaptive Head Light 98
"Add digits" for mobile phone 195
"Address book" for navigation 139
Address for navigation
– deleting 140
– entering 131, 134, 139
– selecting 139
– storing 139
– storing current position 139
"Add to destination list" 134, 136
Adjusting confirmation signals for locking and unlocking 31
Adjusting temperature, with automatic climate control with expanded scope 103
Adjusting the tone during audio operation, refer to Tone control 155
Adjusting thigh support 41
"After door opened" 43
"After unlocking" 43
Airbags 92
– sitting safely 40
– warning lamp 94
Air distribution
– automatic 102, 107
– manual 103
Airing, refer to Ventilation 105
Air recirculation 105
– AUC Automatic recirculated-air control 105
– recirculated-air mode 105
"Air recirculation on / off" 50
Air vents 101
– refer to Ventilation 105
Air vents of automatic climate control 101
Air volume 103, 108
AKI, refer to Fuel specifications 213
Alarm system 34
– avoiding unintentional alarms 35
– interior motion sensor 35
– switching off alarm 34
– switching off tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor 35
– tilt alarm sensor 35
"All channels" with satellite radio 163
"All doors" 30
All-season tires, refer to Winter tires 221
"All stations" display with radio 158
All-wheel drive, refer to xDrive 85
Alterations, technical, refer to For your own safety 5
Alternate route, refer to Bypassing traffic congestion 149
"AM", reception range 155, 158
"Angle of view" for DVD system in rear 177
Antenna for mobile phone 188
Antifreeze
– coolant 225
– washer fluid 64
Antilock Brake System ABS 84
Anti-theft system
– refer to Alarm system 34
– refer to Central locking system 29
Approved axle loads, refer to Weights 244
Approved engine oils 224
Approved gross vehicle weight, refer to Weights 244
Armrest, refer to Center armrest 113
Around the center console 14
Around the steering wheel 10
Arrival time
– refer to Computer 69
– refer to Starting destination guidance 143
"Arrow display" for navigation 144
Arrow view for navigation system 144

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Ashtray
– front 114
– rear 115
Assistance systems, refer to Driving stability control systems 84
Assistance window 20
"Assist. window off" 21
AUC Automatic recirculated-air control 105
"Audio" 157
Audio 154
– controls 154
– switching on/off 154
– tone control 155
– volume 155
Audio CD with DVD system in rear 178
Audio device, external 113
"Audio" for DVD system in rear 184
Automatic
– air distribution 102, 107
– air volume 102, 107
– headlamp control 97
– service notification 204
– steering wheel adjustment, refer to Easy entry/exit 50
– storing stations 159
Automatic car washes 124
– also refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
Automatic climate control 102
– automatic air distribution 102, 107
– switching off 105, 108
– with 4-zone control 107
Automatic curb monitor 49
Automatic garage door opener 110
Automatic lighting
– refer to Automatic headlamp control 97
– refer to Daytime running lamps 98
– refer to Interior lamps 100
– refer to Pathway lighting 97
"Automatic programs" 103
Automatic recirculated-air control AUC 105
Automatic station search 159
Automatic transmission with Steptronic 59
– kick-down 61
– manually releasing transmission lock 61
– tow-starting 239
– with comfort access 36
"Automatic ventilation" 109
AUTO program for automatic climate control 102, 107
"Autostore" on the radio 160
"AUX" 155, 171, 174
– for DVD system in rear 183
– with external audio device 171
AUX-In
– connection 113
– refer to External audio device 171
Average fuel consumption 69
– setting units 79
Average speed, refer to Computer 69
"Avoid ferries" for navigation 142
"Avoid highways" for navigation 141
Avoiding highways for navigation 141
Avoiding unintentional alarms 35
"Avoid tollroads" for navigation 142
Axle loads, refer to Weights 244
"A - Z" 194, 195

B

Backrest contour, refer to Lumbar support 42
Backrests, refer to Seats 41
Backrest width adjustment 41
Backup camera 81
– cleaning 83
– displays 83
– driver assistance functions 82
– switching off 82
– switching on 81
Backup lamps, replacing bulbs 230
Balance, refer to Tone control 156
"Balance" for DVD system in rear 177
Band-aids, refer to First-aid kit 237
Bass, refer to Tone control 155
Battery
– jump starting 237
– refer to Vehicle battery 234
Battery disposal
– remote control with comfort access 37
– vehicle battery 234
Battery replacement
– remote control for DVD system in rear 174
– remote control with comfort access 37
Being towed 239
Belts, refer to Safety belts 45
Beverage holder, refer to Cup holders 114
Blower, refer to Air volume 103, 108
"BMW Assist" 203, 204, 205
BMW Assist
– activating 207
– breakdown assistance 203
– contacting BMW Hotline 205
– information service 205
– services offered 202
– TeleService 204
"BMW Contact" 196
"BMW Contact Numbers" 196

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

BMW homepage 4
BMW maintenance system 226
"BMW Services" 206, 208
BMW website 4
Bottle holder, refer to Cup holders 114
Brackets, adaptive fixing system 118
Brake Assistant, refer to DBC Dynamic Brake Control 84
Brake force display 92
Brake lamps
– brake force display 92
– replacing bulbs 230
Brake pads, breaking-in 122
Brake rotors 123
Brakes
– ABS Antilock Brake System 84
– brake force display 92
– breaking-in 122
– CBC Cornering Brake Control 84
– DBC Dynamic Brake Control 84
– electronic brake-force distribution 84
– parking brake 57
– refer to Braking safely 123
– warning lamp 13
Brake system 122
– brake pads 122
– breaking-in 122
– disc brakes 123
Braking safely 123
Breakdown assistance 203
Breakdown services, refer to Roadside Assistance 237
Breaking-in the differential 122
Break-in period 122
"Brightness" 78, 95
– for DVD system in rear 176
Brightness of Control Display 78
Button for starting engine 56
Buttons on steering wheel 11
Bypassing traffic congestion 149

C

Calibrating driver's seat 46
California Proposition 65 Warning 6
"Call" 195, 206
Call
– accepting 193
– displaying accepted 195
– ending 194
– in absence 195
– starting 193
Calling
– from phone book 194
– from Top 8 list 195
– redialing 195
– refer to telephone operating instructions
Can holder, refer to Cup holders 114
Capacities 244
Capacity of cargo bay 244
Car battery, refer to Vehicle battery 234
Car care, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
Car-care products, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
"Car data" 69
Care 227
– refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
Cargo
– refer to Loading 124
– securing 125
– securing with ski bag 119
Cargo area, refer to Cargo bay 116
Cargo area cover, refer to Roll-up cover 116
Cargo bay
– capacity 244
– dividing up 118
– emergency operation, refer to Opening manually 33
– expanding 117
– opening/closing, refer to Liftgate 33
– opening/closing, refer to Tailgate 34
– opening from inside 33
– opening from outside 33
– opening with remote control 30
Cargo bay cover, refer to Roll-up cover 116
Caring for artificial leather, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
Caring for leather, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
Caring for light-alloy wheels, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
Caring for the carpet, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
Caring for the vehicle finish, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
Car key, refer to Keys/remote control 28
Car phone 188
– installation location, refer to Center armrest 113
– refer to Mobile phone 188
– refer to separate operating instructions
Car radio, refer to Radio 158
Car wash 124
– also refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
– with comfort access 36
Catalytic converter, refer to Hot exhaust system 122

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

"Categories" with satellite radio 163
CBC Cornering Brake Control 84
CBS Condition Based Service 226
"CD" 155, 165
CD, refer to Playing audio tracks, DVD system in rear 178
CD/DVD player, DVD system in rear 173
CD changer 165
– compressed audio files 165
– controls 154
– fast forward/reverse 169
– random sequence 168
– repeating a track 168
– sampling tracks 167
– selecting a CD 166
– selecting a track 166
– switching on/off 154
– tone control 155
– volume 155
"CD" for DVD system in rear 174
CD player 165
– compressed audio files 165
– controls 154
– fast forward/reverse 169
– random sequence 168
– repeating a track 168
– sampling tracks 167
– selecting a track 166
– switching on/off 154
– tone control 155
– volume 155
Cell phone, refer to Mobile phone
Center armrest 113
Center brake lamp 231
Center console 14
"Central locking" 30
Central locking system 29
– comfort access 35
– from inside vehicle 32
Changes, technical
– refer to For your own safety 5
– refer to Parts and accessories 6
Changing language on Control Display 79
Changing tires 220
Changing units of measure on Control Display 79
Changing wheels 232
CHECK button 75
Check Control 74
"Check Control messages" 75
Checking the air pressure, refer to Tire inflation pressure 214
Children, transporting 52
Child restraint fixing system LATCH 54
Child restraint systems 52
Child-safety locks 55
Child seats 52
Chime, refer to Check Control 74
Chrome parts, care, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
Cigarette lighter 115
Cleaning, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
"Climate" 47
Clock 67
– 12h/24h mode 78
– setting time 77
Closing
– from inside 32
– from outside 30
Closing fuel filler cap 212
Clothes hooks 114
Cockpit 10
Cold start, refer to Starting engine 56
"Color" for DVD system in rear 176
Comfort access 35
– observe in car wash 36
– replacing battery 37
Comfort area, refer to Around the center console 14
Comfort operation
– panorama glass sunroof 30, 32
– panorama glass sunroof with comfort access 36
– windows 30, 32
– windows with comfort access 36
– with comfort access 36
Comfort seat 41
Comfort start, refer to Starting engine 56
"Communi-cation" 193, 203, 205
Compact Disc
– refer to CD changer 165
– refer to CD player 165
Compact wheel
– inflation pressure 216
– wheel change 232
Compartment for remote control, refer to Ignition lock 56
Compartments, refer to Storage compartments 113
Compass, digital 111
Computer 69
– displays in instrument cluster 69
– displays on Control Display 69
– trip computer 70
"Concierge" 205
Condition Based Service CBS 226
"Confirmation" 31
Connecting car vacuum cleaner, refer to Connecting electrical devices 115
Connecting headphones 173

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Consumption, refer to Average fuel consumption 69
Consumption indicator, Energy Control 68
Consumption statistics, refer to Average fuel consumption 69
"Continue guidance to destination?" 144
"Contrast" for DVD system in rear 176
Control Center, refer to iDrive 16
Control Display, refer to iDrive 16
– setting brightness 78
Controller, refer to iDrive 16
Controls, refer to Cockpit 10
Controls of DVD system in rear 172
Coolant 225
– checking level 225
– temperature 68
Cooling, maximum 104
Cornering Brake Control CBC 84
Courtesy lamps 100
Cradle for telephone or mobile phone 113
Cruise control 64
Cruising range 69
Cup holders 114
Curb weight, refer to Weights 244
Current fuel consumption 68
"Current position" 150
Current position
– displaying 150
– entering 139
– storing 139
"Customer Relations" 196, 205
Cylinders, refer to Engine data 242

D

Dashboard, refer to Cockpit 10
Data 242
– capacities 244
– dimensions 243
– engine 242
– technical data 242
– weights 244
"Date" 78
Date 67
– display format 78
– retrieving 67
– setting 78
"Date format" 78
"Daytime running lamps" 98
Daytime running lamps 98
DBC Dynamic Brake Control 84
"Deactivated" 43
Decommissioning the vehicle, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
Defrosting windows 103
Defrosting windows and removing condensation 103
Defrost position, refer to Defrosting windows 103
"Delete address book" for navigation 140
"Delete all numbers" on the mobile phone 196
"Delete data" for navigation 140
"Delete" for mobile phone 196
Destination address
– deleting 140
– entering 131, 134
Destination for navigation
– destination list 138
– entry 131
– selecting from address book 139
– selecting using information 137
– selecting using voice 134
– storing 139
Destination guidance 143
– canceling voice instructions 51
– changing specified route 141
– displaying route 144
– distance and arrival 143
– ending/continuing 143
– starting 143
– voice instructions 146
– volume of voice instructions 146
Destination list for navigation system 138
Destinations recently driven to 138
"Details", DVD system in rear 181
"Detour" for navigation 149
Detour for navigation 149
"Dial" for mobile phone 193
"Dial number" 194
"Diamond button" 50
Digital clock 67
Digital compass 111
Dimensions 243
Directional indicators, refer to Turn signals 62
Direction announcements, refer to Voice instructions 146
Direction instructions, refer to Voice instructions 146
Directory for navigation, refer to Address book 139
Direct selection buttons 21
Displacement, refer to Engine data 242
"Display" 78
Display, refer to iDrive 16
Displaying images 181
Display lighting, refer to Instrument lighting 99
"Display off" 21
Displays, refer to Instrument cluster 12
"Display settings" 78, 94

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Displays on the windshield, refer to Head-Up Display 94
Disposal
– battery of remote control with comfort access 37
– remote control battery 174
– vehicle battery 234
Distance, refer to Computer 69
"Distance to dest." 70
Distance to destination, refer to Computer 69
Distance warning, refer to PDC Park Distance Control 80
Door entry lighting 100
Door key, refer to Keys/ remote control 28
Door lock 31
Door locking, confirmation signals 31
"Door locks" 30, 31, 72
Doors
– manual operation 32
– remote control 30
DOT Quality Grades 218
Draft-free ventilation 106
Drinks holder, refer to Cup holders 114
"Driver's door only" 30
Driver's seat, calibrating 46
"Driver's seat climate" 48
Driving lamps, refer to Parking lamps/low beams 97
Driving on poor roads 126
Driving route, refer to Displaying route 144
Driving stability control systems 84
Driving through water 123
Driving tips, refer to General driving notes 122
Dry air, refer to Cooling function 104
DSC Dynamic Stability Control 84
– indicator lamp 13, 84
DTC Dynamic Traction Control 85
– activating 85
– indicator lamp 13, 85
"DVD" DVD system in rear 174
"DVD format" for DVD system in rear 177
DVD for navigation 130
DVD system in rear 172
– CD/DVD player 173
– connecting headphones 173
– controls 172
– displaying images from CD/ DVD 181
– DVD country codes 174
– external device 183
– information on CD/DVD player 182
– playing audio tracks from CD/DVD 178
– playing video from CD/ DVD 174
– remote control 173
– switching on/off 174
Dynamic Brake Control DBC 84
"Dynamic route" for navigation 142
Dynamic Stability Control DSC 84
Dynamic Traction Control DTC 85

E

Easy entry/exit 50
Electrical malfunction
– door lock 32
– driver's door 32
– fuel filler door 212
– liftgate 33
– panorama glass sunroof 39
Electric steering wheel adjustment 49
Electronic brake-force distribution 84
Electronic oil level check 223
Emergency call 236
Emergency operation, refer to Manual operation
– door lock 32
– driver's door 32
– fuel filler door 212
– liftgate 33
– panorama glass sunroof 39
– transmission lock, automatic transmission 61
Emergency services, refer to Roadside Assistance 237
"Enable services" 208
"End call" 194
Energy-conscious driving, refer to Energy Control 68
Energy Control 68
Engine
– breaking-in 122
– data 242
– overheated, refer to Coolant temperature 68
– speed 242
– starting 56
– starting, comfort access 36
– starting difficulties 57
– switching off 57
Engine compartment 223
Engine coolant 225
Engine oil
– adding 224
– additives, refer to Approved engine oils 224
– approved engine oil 224
– checking oil level 223
– electronic oil level check 223
"Engine oil level" 224
Engine output, refer to Engine data 242
Engine overheating, refer to Coolant temperature 68
Engine speed 242
Engine starting, refer to Starting engine 56
"Enter address" 132

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Entering country of destination 132
Entering destination 132
Entering house number or intersection 133
Entering intersection 133
Entering street 133
"Entertainment" 154
Entertainment sound output on/off 155
"Equalizer", refer to Tone control 157
Equalizer, refer to Tone control 157
"ESN" 162
ESP Electronic Stability Program, refer to DSC Dynamic Stability Control 84
Event Data Recorders 227
Exhaust system, refer to Hot exhaust system 122
Exterior mirrors 48
– automatic dimming feature 49
– automatic heating 49
– folding in and out 48
– tilting down passenger-side exterior mirror 49
External audio device 113, 171
Eye for tow-starting and towing, refer to Tow fitting 238

F

Fader, refer to Tone control 156
Failure messages, refer to Check Control 74
False alarm, refer to Avoiding unintentional alarms 35
Fastening safety belts, refer to Safety belts 45
– warning lamp 46
Fastest route for navigation 141
Fast forward
– CD changer 169
– CD player 169
"Fast route" for navigation 141
First aid, refer to First-aid kit 237
First-aid kit 237
Fixing system, adaptive 117
Flashing during locking/unlocking, refer to Setting confirmation signals 31
Flashlight, refer to Rechargeable flashlight 113
Flat tire
– changing wheels 232
– compact wheel 232
– Flat Tire Monitor 87
– run-flat tires 88, 90, 220
– TPM Tire Pressure Monitor 89
Flat Tire Monitor 87
– false alarms 87
– initializing system 87
– snow chains 221
– system limits 87
– warning lamp 88
"FM", reception range 155, 158
FM, waveband 158
Fog lamps 99
– indicator lamp 13, 99
Folding display screen open/closed, DVD system in rear 172
Folding rear seat back 117
Fold-over rear seat backrest 117
Footbrake, refer to Braking safely 123
Footwell lamps 100
For your own safety 5
4-wheel drive system, refer to xDrive 85
Fresh-air nozzles, refer to Air vents 101
Front airbags 92
Front passenger airbags
– deactivating 93
– refer to Exception of front passenger seat 52
Front seat adjustment 41
"FTM" 88
FTM, refer to Flat Tire Monitor 87
Fuel 213
– capacity 244
– display 68
– high-quality brands 213
– quality 213
– specifications 213
Fuel clock, refer to Fuel gauge 68
Fuel consumption display, computer, average fuel consumption 69
Fuel display, refer to Fuel gauge 68
Fuel filler door 212
– closing 212
– opening 212
– releasing in the event of electrical malfunction 212
Fuses 234

G

Garage door opener, refer to Integrated universal remote control 110
Gasoline, refer to Required fuel 213
Gasoline display, refer to Fuel gauge 68
General driving notes 122
Glass sunroof, electric
– comfort operation from outside 32
– comfort operation with comfort access 36
– remote control 30

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Glove compartment 113
– lighting 113
GPS navigation, refer to Navigation system 130
Grills, refer to Ventilation 105
Grills of the automatic climate control 101
Gross vehicle weight, refer to Weights 244

H

Handbrake, refer to Parking brake 57
Hand lamp, refer to Rechargeable flashlight 113
Hands-free system, refer to Microphone 14
Hazard warning flashers 15
HDC Hill Descent Control 85
Head airbags 92
Headlamp control, automatic 97
Headlamp flasher 62
Headlamps 97
– care, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
– cleaning, refer to Washer/wiper system 63
Head Light, refer to Adaptive Head Light 98
Head restraints 43
– removing 43
– sitting safely 40
"Head-Up Display" 95
Head-Up Display 94
Heated
– mirrors 49
– rear window 103
– seats 47
– steering wheel 50
Heating 101
– exterior mirrors 49
– interior 101
– rear window 103
– residual heat 105
– seats 47
– steering wheel 50
Heating with engine switched off, refer to Residual heat 105
Heavy cargo, refer to Securing cargo 125
Height, refer to Dimensions 243
Height adjustment
– seats 41
– steering wheel 49
High beams 62, 99
– headlamp flasher 99
– indicator lamp 13
Highs, refer to Treble and bass 155
High water, refer to Driving through water 123
Highway, refer to Route criteria 141
Hill Descent Control HDC 85
Hills 123
Holder for cups 114
Home address 141
"Home address" for navigation 141
Homepage 4
Hood 222
Horn 10
Hot exhaust system 122
"Hour memo" 78
"House number" for destination entry 134
Hydraulic brake assistant, refer to DBC Dynamic Brake Control 84
Hydroplaning 123

I

Ice, refer to Outside temperature warning 67
ID3 tag, refer to Information on track 167
iDrive 16
– assistance window 20
– changing language 79
– changing menu page 19
– changing settings 77
– changing units of measure and display type 79
– confirming selection or entry 19
– controller 16
– controls 16
– displays, menus 17
– selecting menu item 19
– setting brightness 78
– setting date 78
– setting time 77
– start menu 17
– status information 20
– symbols 18
Ignition 56
– switched off 56
– switched on 56
Ignition key, refer to Keys/remote control 28
Ignition key position 1, refer to Radio readiness 56
Ignition key position 2, refer to Ignition on 56
Ignition lock 56
– starting engine with comfort access 36
Independent ventilation, refer to Parked car ventilation 108
Indicator/warning lamps 13
– active steering 91
– airbags 94
– DSC 13, 84
– DTC 13, 85
– fasten safety belt 46
– Flat Tire Monitor 88
– fog lamps 13
– TPM Tire Pressure Monitor 90
Individual air distribution 104
Individually programmable buttons on steering wheel 50
Individual settings, refer to Personal Profile 28

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Inflation pressure, refer to Tire inflation pressure 214
Inflation pressure monitoring
– refer to Flat Tire Monitor 87
– refer to TPM Tire Pressure Monitor 89
Information
– on another location 137
– on country 137
– on current position 137
– on destination location 137
"Information on destination" 138
Information service 205
"Info sources" 72
Initializing
– Flat Tire Monitor 87
– refer to Power failure 234
– refer to Setting date 78
– refer to Setting time 77
– seat, mirror and steering wheel memory 42
"Input map" 136
Installation location
– drive for navigation DVD 130
– mobile phone 113
Instructions for navigation system, refer to Voice instructions 146
Instrument cluster 12
Instrument lighting 99
Instrument panel
– refer to Cockpit 10
– refer to Instrument cluster 12
Integrated key 28
Integrated universal remote control 110
Interesting destination for navigation 137
"Interim time" 76
Interior lamps 100
– switching on with remote control 30
Interior motion sensor 35
– switching off 35
Interior rearview mirror 49
– automatic dimming feature 49
– compass 111
Intermittent mode of the wipers 63

J

Jacking points 233
Joystick
– refer to iDrive 16
– refer to Selector lever, selecting transmission positions 60
Jumpering, refer to Jump starting 237
Jump starting 237

K

Keyless-Go, refer to Comfort access 35
Keyless opening and closing, refer to Comfort access 35
Key Memory, refer to Personal Profile 28
"Keypad" 197
Keys 28
– key-related settings, refer to Personal Profile 28
Kick-down, automatic transmission with Steptronic 61
Knock control 213

L

Lamps, refer to Parking lamps/ low beams 97
Lamps and bulbs 228
"Language / Units" 79
– for navigation 146
"Language" for DVD system in rear 177
"Languages" 79
– for DVD system in rear 176
– for navigation 146
Lashing eyes, refer to Securing cargo 125
Last destinations, refer to Destination list 138
"Last seat pos." 43
LATCH child restraint fixing system 54
LEDs light-emitting diodes 229
Length, refer to Dimensions 243
License plate lamp, replacing bulbs 231
Liftgate 33
– closing 33
– locking and unlocking from inside 32
– opening from inside 33
– opening from outside 33
– opening manually 33
Light-emitting diodes LEDs 229
Lighter 115
Lighter socket 115
"Lighting" 63, 98
Lighting
– instruments 99
– of the vehicle, refer to Lamps 97
Light switch 97
"Limit" 76
Loading
– securing cargo 125
– stowing cargo 125
– vehicle 124
Load securing equipment, refer to Securing cargo 125
"Lock after driving" 32
Lock buttons in the doors, refer to Locking 32
Locking
– from inside 32
– from outside 30
– setting confirmation signals 31
– without key, refer to Comfort access 35

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Locking and unlocking doors
– from inside 32
– from outside 30
– setting confirmation signals 31
Locking without key, refer to Comfort access 35
Low beams 97
– automatic 97
Lower back support, refer to Lumbar support 42
Lows, refer to Treble and bass 155
Lug bolts 233
– tightening torque, refer to After mounting 233
– wrench 232
Luggage compartment capacity, refer to Cargo bay capacity 244
Luggage net, refer to Separation net 116
Luggage rack, refer to Roof-mounted luggage rack 126
Lumbar support 42

M

M+S tires, refer to Winter tires 221
"Main menu" for DVD system in rear 177
Maintenance
– refer to Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models 226
– refer to Service requirements 71
– refer to Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models 226
Maintenance system 226
Malfunction
– door lock 32
– fuel filler door 212
– liftgate 33
Malfunction warnings, refer to Check Control 74
Manual air distribution 103
Manually releasing transmission lock 61
Manual mode, automatic transmission with Steptronic 61
Manual operation
– door lock 32
– driver's door 32
– fuel filler door 212
– panorama glass sunroof 39
– transmission lock, automatic transmission 61
"Manual" with radio 159
Map
– changing scale 145
– destination entry 136
"Map direction of travel" 145
"Map facing north" 145
Map facing north 145
Master key, refer to Keys/remote control 28
Maximum cooling 104
Maximum speed
– for winter tires 221
– with compact wheel 234
Memory, refer to Seat, mirror and steering wheel memory 42
"Menu"
– for DVD system in rear 177
– with rear entertainment 175
Menus, refer to iDrive 16
Message list for traffic information 148
Microfilter 106
Microphone
– for mobile phone 14
– for voice command system 14
Mirror dimming feature 49
Mirrors 48
– automatic curb monitor 49
– folding in and out 48
– heating 49
– memory, refer to Seat, mirror and steering wheel memory 42
"Missed calls" 194
Missed calls 195
Mobile communications devices in vehicle 122
Mobile phone
– accepted calls 195
– adjusting volume 192
– calling 193
– ending call 194
– installation location, refer to Center armrest 113
– missed calls 195
– operation via iDrive 192
– redialing 195
– refer to separate operating instructions
– Top 8 195
– touch tone dialing 196
Mobile phones, use in the interior, refer to Mobile communications devices 122
Monitor, refer to iDrive 16
Monitoring pressure of tires, refer to Flat Tire Monitor 87
"Monitor on / off" 50
MP3, refer to Compressed audio files 165
Multi-function steering wheel, refer to Buttons on steering wheel 11
Multifunction switch
– refer to Turn signals/headlamp flasher 62
– refer to Washer/wiper system 63
Music track, refer to Tracks 166
"Mute on / off" 50

N

"Navigation" 69, 131
Navigation destination
– entering manually 131, 134
– home address 141
– selecting via map 136
Navigation drive, installation location 130
Navigation DVD 130

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Navigation instructions, refer to Switching voice instructions on/off 146
Navigation system 130
– address book 139
– changing route 147
– destination entry 131
– destination guidance in assistance window 130
– destination list 138
– displaying current position 150
– displaying route 144
– ending/continuing destination guidance 143
– entering a destination manually 131, 134
– last destinations 138
– navigation DVD 130
– opening 131
– route list 145
– searching for a special destination 137
– selecting destination using information 137
– selecting destination via map 136
– selecting route criteria 141
– starting destination guidance 143
– switching off, refer to Ending/continuing destination guidance 143
– voice instructions 146
– volume adjustment 146
"Navigation voice instructions" 50
Neck support, refer to Head restraints 43
"New address" for navigation 139
"New data request" for BMW Assist 205
"New destination" 131, 136
New remote control 28
"New route" 147
New wheels and tires 220
"Next entertainment source" 50
"No video signal" for DVD system in rear 183
Nozzles, refer to Windshield washer nozzles 64
"NTSC" for DVD system in rear 184
Nylon rope, refer to Tow-starting and towing 238

O

OBD socket 227
Octane ratings, refer to Fuel specifications 213
Odometer 67
Oil
– additives, refer to Approved engine oils 224
– approved engine oils 224
– consumption, refer to Checking engine oil level 223
– level 223
– refilling, refer to Adding engine oil 224
Oil change interval, refer to Service requirements 71
"On a new destination" for navigation 137
Onboard computer, refer to iDrive 16
"Onboard info" 69
Onboard toolkit 228
"On destination" 137
"On location" 137
Opening and closing
– comfort access 35
– from inside 32
– from outside 30
– panorama glass sunroof 38
– using remote control 30
– using the door lock 31
Operation by voice for mobile phone 197
– adjusting volume 198
– canceling 198
– correcting phone number 199
– dialing phone number 199
– placing a call 199
– redialing 200
– voice commands 198
– voice phone book 199
Operation on poor roads 126
"Options" 206
Orientation menu, refer to Start menu 17
Outlet slits, refer to Air vents 101
Output, refer to Engine data 242
Outside air, refer to AUC Automatic recirculated-air control 105
Outside temperature display 67
– changing unit of measure 79
"Overview" for DVD system in rear 181

P

Panic mode 30
Panorama glass sunroof 38
– moving manually 39
Park Distance Control PDC 80
"Parked car operation" 109
"Parked car ventilation" 109
Parked car ventilation 108
– activating activation time 109
– preselecting activation times 109
– switching on and off directly 108
Parking, vehicle 57
Parking aid
– refer to Backup camera 81
– refer to PDC Park Distance Control 80

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Parking assistant, refer to PDC Park Distance Control 80
Parking brake 57
– indicator lamp 13
Parking lamps 97
Parts and accessories 6
"Passenger's seat climate" 48
Passenger-side exterior mirror, tilting down 49
"Pathway lighting" 98
Pathway lighting 97
"Pause" for DVD system in rear 178
"PDC" 81
"PDC display on" 81
PDC Park Distance Control 80
Personal Profile 28
"Perspective" 145
Phone book 192
– creating and editing voice phone book 199
Phone numbers
– deleting from phone book 196
– dialing 193
– most recent numbers 195
– selecting in phone book 195
– Top 8 195
"Photo" for DVD system in rear 174, 181
Pinch protection system
– panorama glass sunroof 39
– power windows 37
Plasters, refer to First-aid kit 237
"Play"
– for DVD system in rear 178, 180
– in audio mode 166
– with satellite radio 163
Playing videos, DVD system in rear 174
Plug-in unit for remote control, refer to Ignition lock 56
Position
– displaying 150
– storing, refer to Storing current position 139
Power failure 234
Power windows, refer to Windows 37
Preselecting activation times of the parked car ventilation 109
"Presets"
– display with radio 158
– with satellite radio 163
Pressure, tires 214
Pressure monitoring of tires, refer to TPM Tire Pressure Monitor 89
"Profile" 208
Programmable buttons on steering wheel 50
Programmable memory buttons 21
Protective function, refer to Pinch protection system
– panorama glass sunroof 39
– windows 37

CarManuals2.com

R

Radio
– Autostore 159
– controls 154
– listen to station 158
– sampling stations 159
– satellite radio 162
– selecting frequency manually 159
– selecting waveband 154, 158
– station search 159
– station with the best reception 159
– storing stations 160
– switching on/off 154
– tone control 155
– volume 155
– Weather Band 161
Radio key, refer to Keys/ remote control 28
Radio position, refer to Radio readiness 56
Radio readiness 56
– switched off 56
– switched on 56
– with comfort access 36
Rain sensor 63
"Random"
– for DVD system in rear 179
– refer to Random sequence 168
"Random all"
– for DVD system in rear 180
– in audio mode 168
"Random directory"
– for DVD system in rear 180
– in audio mode 168
Random sequence 168
"RDS" Radio Data System 161
Reading lamps 100
"Rear climate control" 107
"Rear enabled" 172
Rear entertainment, refer to DVD system in rear 172
Rear lamps, refer to Tail lamps 230
– replacing bulbs 230
Rear seat backrest, folding 117
Rear seats 44
– adjusting head restraints 44
– folding over backrest 117
– heating 47, 48
Rear ventilation 106
– rear automatic climate control 107
– 3rd row seats 106
Rearview mirror 48
Rear window
– heating 103
– replacing wiper blade 228
– windshield wiper 64, 124
Rear window safety switch 38
Rear window wiper, replacing wiper blade 228

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

"Received calls" 194
Recent numbers in mobile phone 195
Reception level of mobile phone, refer to Status information 20
Rechargeable flashlight 113
Recirculated-air mode 105
– air recirculation 105
– AUC Automatic recirculated-air control 105
Recording times, refer to Stopwatch 76
"Redial" for mobile phone 194
Reflectors, refer to Tail lamps 230
Refueling 212
Releasing
– hood 222
– refer to Unlocking 35
"Relock door if not opened" 32
Remaining distance, refer to Cruising range 69
Remaining distance to destination, refer to Computer 69
Remote control 28
– comfort access 35
– DVD system in rear 173
– garage door opener 110
– liftgate 30
– malfunction 31, 36
– replacing battery 37
Removing condensation on the windows 103
"Repeat"
– for DVD system in rear 179
– in audio mode 168
"Repeat directory"
– for DVD system in rear 178, 181
– in audio mode 168
"Repeat track"
– for DVD system in rear 178, 180
– in audio mode 168
Replacement fuses 234
Replacement of tires, refer to Changing wheels 232
Replacing bulbs, refer to Lamps and bulbs 228
Replacing tires 220
Replacing wheels/tires, refer to New wheels and tires 220
Replacing wiper blades 228
Reporting an accident, refer to Initiating an emergency call 236
Reporting safety defects 7
Reserve warning, refer to Fuel gauge 68
Reservoir for washer systems 64
"Reset" 88, 90
– for DVD system in rear 176, 177
– stopwatch 76
– tone settings 157
Reset, refer to Resetting tone settings 157
"resetting FTM ..." 88
Residual heat 105
Restraint systems
– for children 52
– refer to Safety belts 45
Retreaded tires 220
"Return" for DVD system in rear 177
Reverse
– CD changer 169
– CD player 169
Reverse gear, automatic transmission with Steptronic 60
Road map 145
"Roadside Assistance" 203
Roadside Assistance 237
Roadside parking lamps 99
Roller sun blinds 113
Roll-up cover 116
Roof load capacity 244
Roof-mounted luggage rack 126
Rope, refer to Tow-starting and towing 238
Rotary pushbutton, refer to iDrive 16
Route 141
– changing 147
– displaying 144
– displaying arrow display 144
– displaying map view 145
– displaying streets and towns/cities 145
– displaying towns/cities 145
– list 145
– selecting 141
– selecting criteria 141
RSC, refer to Run-flat tires 220
Run-flat tires 220
– continuing driving with a damaged tire 88, 90
– flat tire 88, 90
– new wheels and tires 220
– tire inflation pressure 88, 90, 214
– tire replacement 220, 221

S

Safety 5
Safety belts 45
– damage 46
– sitting safely 40
– warning lamp 46
Safety belt tensioners
– refer to Airbags 92
– refer to Safety belts 45
Safety systems
– ABS Antilock Brake System 84
– airbags 92
– DSC Dynamic Stability Control 84
– safety belts 45
"SAT" 155, 162
Satellite radio 162
– displaying additional information 163
– enabling 162
– selecting channel 163
– storing channel 163

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

"Scan"
– for DVD system in rear 179
– sampling stations with radio 159
– sampling tracks with CD 167
Scan
– CD changer 167
– CD player 167
– radio 159
"Scan all"
– for DVD system in rear 180
– in audio mode 167
"Scan directory"
– for DVD system in rear 180
– in audio mode 167
Screen, refer to iDrive 16
"Screen brightness" for DVD system in rear 176
Screw thread for tow fitting 238
SDARS, refer to Satellite radio 162
"Seat heater distribution" 47
Seats 41
– adjusting 41
– comfort seat 41
– heating 47
– lumbar support 42
– memory, refer to Seat, mirror and steering wheel memory 42
– sitting safely 40
– storing the setting 42
– thigh support 41
– ventilation, refer to Active seat ventilation 47
2nd row seats 44
Securing load
– refer to Securing cargo 125
– with ski bag, refer to Securing cargo 119
"Select as destination" 138, 206
"Select current speed" 76
Selecting audio source 154
Selecting country for navigation 132
Selecting frequency manually 159
Selecting menu items 19
Selecting new scale for navigation 145
Selector lever, automatic transmission with Steptronic 60
Selector lever lock, refer to Reverse gear 60
Self-leveling suspension 87
Separation net 116
"Service" 72, 204, 223
Service, refer to Roadside Assistance 237
Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models 226
Service interval indicator, refer to Service requirements 71
"Service notification" 204
"Service Request" 196, 204
"Service requirements" 72, 204, 224
Service requirements 71
– also refer to CBS Condition Based Service 226
"Service Status" 208
"Set date" 78
"Set" on trip computer 70
"Set service date" 73
"Set time" 77
"Settings" 206, 207
Settings
– changing on Control Display 77
– clock, 12h/24h mode 78
– configuring, refer to Personal Profile 28
"Settings" for unlocking 30
Setting speed limit 76
Setting time, refer to Preselecting activation times 109
"SET" with rear entertainment 175
Shifting, automatic transmission with Steptronic 61
Short commands of voice command system 245
Shortest route in navigation, refer to Selecting route 141
"Short route" for navigation 141
Shoulder support 41
"Show current position" 137
"Show destination position" 137
Shuffled, refer to Random
– CD changer 168
– CD player 168
Side airbags 92
Side marker lamps, replacing bulbs 229
Signal horn, refer to Horn 10
Sitting safely 40
– with airbags 40
– with head restraint 40
– with safety belts 40
Ski bag 118
Slide show, refer to Displaying images 181
Sliding/tilt sunroof, refer to Panorama glass sunroof 38
Slope assistant, refer to Starting assistant 123
Smokers' package, refer to Ashtray 114
Snow chains 221
Socket for Onboard Diagnostics interface 227
Socket for remote control, refer to Ignition lock 56
Sockets, refer to Connecting electrical devices 115
Song search, refer to Sampling tracks 167
SOS, refer to Initiating an emergency call 236
Spare fuses 234
Spare key 28
– adapter 28

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Spare remote control 28
Spare wheel
– refer to Changing wheels 232
– refer to Compact wheel 232
Special oils, refer to Approved engine oils 224
Specified oil grades, refer to Approved engine oils 224
Speed
– with compact wheel 234
– with winter tires 221
Speed-dependent volume 156
Speed limit warning, refer to Speed limit 76
Speedometer 12
"Speed volume", refer to Tone control 156
Sport program, automatic transmission with Steptronic 61
Stability control, refer to Driving stability control systems 84
"Standard" for DVD system in rear 177, 184
"Star button" 50
Star button 50
Start/Stop button 56
"Start" for stopwatch 76
"Start guidance" 134, 143
Starting, refer to Starting engine 56
Starting assistance, refer to Jump starting 237
Starting assistant 123
Starting difficulties
– jump starting 237
– refer to Special starting conditions 57
Starting off on slopes, refer to Starting assistant 123
Start menu, iDrive 17
"Start service" 203
"State / Province" for destination entry 132
"State inspection" 73
Station, refer to Radio 158
"Status" 73
Status of this Owner's Manual at time of printing 5
Steering wheel
– adjusting 49
– buttons on steering wheel 11
– easy entry/exit 50
– heating 50
– lock 56
– memory 42
– programmable buttons 50
"Steering wheel buttons" 50
Steering with variable ratio, refer to Active steering 91
Steptronic, refer to Automatic transmission with Steptronic 59
"Stop" for stopwatch 76
"Stopwatch" 76
Stopwatch 76
Storage compartments 113
"Store"
– with radio 160
– with satellite radio 164
"Store in address book" for navigation 139
Storing current position 139
Storing radio stations 160
Storing sitting position, refer to Seat, mirror and steering wheel memory 42
Storing tires 221
"Street" for destination entry 133
"Subtitles" for DVD system in rear 177
Summer tires, refer to Wheels and tires 214
Switches, refer to Cockpit 10
Switching cooling function on and off 104
Switching off engine 57
Switching on
– audio 154
– CD changer 154
– CD player 154
– radio 154
Switching on hour signal 78
Swiveling headlamps, refer to Adaptive Head Light 98
Symbols 4
– indicator/warning lamps 13
– navigation system 150
– traffic information with navigation system 147

T

Tachometer 68
Tailgate 34
– opening from inside 33
– opening from outside 33
– opening manually 33
Tail lamps 230
– replacing bulbs 230
Tank contents, refer to Capacities 244
Target cursor for navigation 136
Technical alterations, refer to For your own safety 5
Technical data 242
Telematic, refer to TeleService, BMW Assist 202
Telephone
– refer to Mobile phone 188
– refer to separate operating instructions
"Telephone list" 50
TeleService 204
Temperature
– adjusting in upper body region 103
– adjusting with automatic climate control 103, 107
– of coolant, refer to Coolant temperature 68

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Temperature display
– outside temperature 67
– setting units 79
– temperature warning 67
Temperature warning 67
Tempomat, refer to Cruise control 64
"Terminate services" 207
"Text language" 79
The individual vehicle 5
Third brake lamp, refer to Center brake lamp 231
3rd row seats 45
"TI" 148
Tightening torque of the lug bolts, refer to After mounting 233
Tilt alarm sensor, switching off 35
Tilting down passenger-side exterior mirror 49
"Time" 77
"Time / Date" 77, 78
"Time format" 78
Timer, refer to Preselecting activation times 109
"Timer 1" for parked car ventilation 109
"Timer 2" for parked car ventilation 109
Tire inflation pressures 214
Tire pressure loss 88, 90
Tire pressure monitoring, refer to Flat Tire Monitor 87
Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 89
Tire Quality Grading 218
Tire replacement, new wheels and tires 220
Tires
– age 218
– air loss 88, 90
– breaking-in 122
– changing 220
– condition 219
– damage 219
– flat tire, refer to Changing wheels 232
– inflation pressure 214
– new wheels and tires 220
– pressure monitoring 87
– pressure monitoring, refer to TPM Tire Pressure Monitor 89
– replacing 232
– retreaded tires 220
– run-flat tires 220
– size 218
– tread 219
– wear indicators 219
– wheel/tire combination 220
– winter tires 221
"Title" for DVD system in rear 177
TMC station, refer to Traffic information 147
"Tone" 155
– for DVD system in rear 177
Tone in audio mode
– adjusting 155
– middle setting 157
Tone on locking/unlocking 31
Tools, refer to Onboard toolkit 228
"Top 8" for mobile phone 194
Torque
– engine 242
– lug bolts, refer to After mounting 233
Touch tone dialing 196
Tow fitting 238
Towing 238
– tow fitting 238
"Town / City" for destination entry 132
Town/city for destination entry 132
Tow-starting 238, 239
"TPM" 90
TPM Tire Pressure Monitor 89
– resetting system 89
– system limits 89
– warning lamp 90
Tracks
– finding 167
– random sequence 168
– sampling, scan 167
Track width, refer to Dimensions 243
Traction-assist feature, refer to DSC Dynamic Stability Control 84
Traction control, refer to DSC Dynamic Stability Control 84
Traffic congestion
– bypassing 149
– displaying traffic information 147
"Traffic Info" 147
Traffic information for navigation
– depiction in route map 149
– displaying 148
– during destination guidance 149
– switching on/off 147
– symbols 150
Transmission
– automatic transmission with Steptronic 59
– manually releasing transmission lock on automatic transmission with Steptronic 61
– starting assistant 123
Transmission positions, refer to Automatic transmission with Steptronic 59
Transporting children safely 52
Transport securing device, refer to Securing cargo 125
Tread depth, refer to Minimum tread depth 219

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Treble, refer to Tone control 155
"Treble / Bass" for DVD system in rear 177
"Trip computer" 70
Trip computer 70
Trip-distance counter, refer to Trip odometer 67
"Triple turn signal" 63
Trip odometer 67
Turning circle, refer to Dimensions 243
Turn signals 62
– indicator lamp 12
– replacing bulbs 229

U

Underbody protection, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
Uniform Tire Quality Grading/ UTQR 218
"Units" 79
Units
– average fuel consumption 79
– temperature 79
Universal garage-door opener, refer to Integrated universal remote control 110
Universal remote control 110
"Unlock button" 30
Unlocking
– from inside 32
– from outside 30
– without key, refer to Comfort access 35
Unlocking without key, refer to Comfort access 35
"Unlock rear menu" for DVD system in rear 172
"Update services" 206
Used batteries
– refer to Disposal 234
– refer to Replacing battery 37

V

Valve screw caps, refer to After mounting 233
Vehicle
– battery 234
– breaking-in 122
– care 227
– care, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
– decommissioning, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
– loading 124
– measurements, refer to Dimensions 243
– parking 57
– washing, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
– weights 244
"Vehicle / Tires" for unlocking 30
Vehicle jack 232
– jacking points 233
Vehicle position, refer to Displaying current position 150
Ventilation 105
– draft-free 106
– in the rear 106
– rear automatic climate control 108
– 3rd row seats 106
– while stationary 108
Vent outlets of automatic climate control 101
Vents, refer to Ventilation 105
"Vent settings" 104
"Video settings" for DVD system in rear 176
Voice, refer to Voice instructions for navigation system 146
Voice command system 23
– short commands 245
Voice instructions for navigation system 146
– muting 51, 146
– repeating 51, 146
– switching on/off 51, 146
– volume 146
Voice phone book 199
Volume
– mobile phone 192
– setting speed-dependent 156
– voice instructions 146
Volume distribution in audio mode
– front/rear 156
– right/left 156
Volume of warning tones 79

W

Warning lamps, refer to Indicator and warning lamps 13
Warning messages, refer to Check Control 74
Warning tone, volume 79
Warning triangle 236
Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models 226
Washer/wiper system 63
– rain sensor 63
– washer fluid 64
– windshield washer nozzles 64
Washer fluid 64
– capacity of the reservoir 64
Washer fluid reservoir 64
Washing the vehicle, also refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
Water on roads, refer to Driving through water 123
Waveband for radio 158
"WB" 155, 161
Wear indicators in tires, refer to Minimum tread depth 219
Weather Band 161
Website 4

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Weights 244
Wheel/tire combination, refer to New wheels and tires 220
Wheel/tire damage 219
Wheelbase, refer to Dimensions 243
Wheels and tires 214
Width, refer to Dimensions 243
Windows 37
– comfort operation 30
– comfort operation from outside 32
– comfort operation with comfort access 36
– safety switch 38
Windshield
– cleaning, refer to Washer/wiper system 63
– defrosting, refer to Defrosting windows 103
– displays, refer to Head-Up Display 94
Windshield washer system
– refer to Washer/wiper system 63
– windshield washer nozzles 64
Windshield wipers, refer to Washer/wiper system 63
– replacing wiper blades 228
Winter tires 221
– setting speed limit 76
– storage 221
"With highways" for navigation 141
Word matching principle for navigation 142
Working in the engine compartment 222
Wrenches/screwdrivers, refer to Onboard toolkit 228

X

xDrive 85

Z

"Zoom" for DVD system in rear 177

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

Refueling

So that you will have important specifications available when you stop to refuel, we recommend that you supplement the following tables with data which apply to your vehicle. Consult the index for individual specifications.

Fuel

Quality

Please enter your preferred fuel here.

Engine oil

Preferred oil grade

Tire inflation pressure

	Summer tires Front	Rear	Winter tires Front	Rear
Up to 4 persons				
5 persons or 4 plus luggage				

CarManuals2.com

BMW recommends Castrol

More about BMW

bmwusa.com

The Ultimate
Driving Machine

CarManuals2.com

01 41 0 012 501 ue

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 501 - © 08/06 BMW AG